

Connect

الصف الخامس الابتدائى
الفصل الدراسى الثانى

Primary 5

2nd. Term

Parents' Guide دليل ولى الأمر





Egyptian Knowledge Bank
بنك المعرفة المصري



QR Codes

Listen to Vocabulary & Audioscripts





التوزيع : ١٠ شارع كامل صدقى - الفجالة - القاهرة
تليفون : ٢٥٩١٩١٦٥

للاستعلام وإبداء الآراء والإقتراحات - الإدارة/ تليفون : ٢٥٨٨٠١٠٢

2023

Introduction
مقدمة

Welcome to Connect

Primary 5

أهلا بكم مع سلسلة كونكت
الصف الخامس الابتدائى

Aims of the Parents' Guide

This Parents' Guide creates an enjoyable and engaging environment full of fun engaging activities, to encourage the students' language development.

The Parents' Guide aims to give Primary Five students the tools they need to develop their knowledge and use of English, and to increase their grasp of both the spoken and the written language, including basic phonetic sounds.

The course has been carefully designed to support whole child development; it not only supports the language development of the child, but also attends to their physical, cognitive, social and emotional needs.

Therefore, the activities combine life skills, values, issues and challenges, and Content and Language Integrated Learning (CLIL) with games, stories and projects. This is done in order to create a comprehensive, successful learning experience.

أهداف دليل ولى الأمر

يقدم دليل ولى الأمر إطار شيق وجذاب مع كثير من الانشطة الممتعة وذلك لتشجيع التلاميذ فى تطوير اللغة.

يهدف دليل ولى الأمر إلى توفير الأدوات المطلوبة لتلاميذ الصف الخامس الابتدائى لزيادة معلوماتهم وتطوير استخدامهم للغة الانجليزية سواء فى مهارات التحدث أو الكتابة بالإضافة إلى اصوات النطق الاساسية.

وقد تم اعداد هذا المنهج بعناية لمساعدة تطوير التلاميذ بشكل عام ليس فى اللغة وحسب ولكن ايضا يقدم لهم ما يلبى احتياجاتهم النفسية والمعرفية والاجتماعية والعاطفية.

ولذلك فان الأنشطة تجمع بين المهارات الحياتية والقيم والقضايا والتحديات وتم تضمين المحتوى بألعاب وقصص ومشروعات. وتم عمل كل ذلك لخلق مجال تعلم متكامل وناجح.

Teaching phonics

The teaching of phonics plays an important role in developing literacy. An awareness of phonics facilitates the students' ability to discriminate between similar sounds and this develops their listening skills.

تدريس الصوتيات

يلعب تدريس الصوتيات دورًا هامًا في تطوير معرفة القراءة والكتابة. يعمل الوعي بالصوتيات على تسهيل قدرة التلاميذ على التمييز بين الأصوات المماثلة وبذلك يطور مهارات الاستماع الخاصة بهم.

Stories and activities promote and develop critical thinking and problem solving skills. The aim is to make thinking fun for children. While learning English, specific attention should be dedicated to the development of a child's ability to recall information, ask questions, make decisions, solve problems, evaluate and organize information. Within the materials as a whole, the students actively contribute to their own cognitive development, which helps to create confident, smart, early thinkers.

تعمل القصص والأنشطة على تعزيز وتطوير مهارات التفكير النقدى وحل المشكلات. الهدف هو جعل التفكير ممتع للأطفال. أثناء تعلم اللغة الإنجليزية ، ينبغي تخصيص اهتمام خاص لتطوير قدرة الطفل على تذكر المعلومات وطرح الأسئلة واتخاذ القرارات وحل المشكلات وتقييم وتنظيم المعلومات. وفى المادة الدراسية المقدمة، يساهم التلاميذ بشكل فعال في تطويرهم المعرفي، مما يساعد على خلق مفكرين مبتكرين واثقين وأذكياء.

Teaching values

Values education is the teaching of values such as tolerance, honesty, cooperation and independence. These values help to create good citizens, and are very important development step for children of this age.

تعليم القيم

إن تعليم القيم هو تعليم القيم مثل التسامح والصدق والتعاون والاستقلال. هذه القيم تساعد على خلق مواطنين صالحين، وهي خطوة إنمائية مهمة جدًا للأطفال في هذا العمر.

The major areas identified by the framework are:

1- Cultural responsibility issues
2- Environmental responsibility issues
3- Self-reflection issues
4- Making sensible choices issues

المجالات الرئيسية المقدمة فى المنهج هى:

١- قضايا المسئولية الثقافية
٢- قضايا المسئولية عن البيئة
٣- قضايا التأمل الذاتي
٤- قضايا اتخاذ القرارات الصائبة





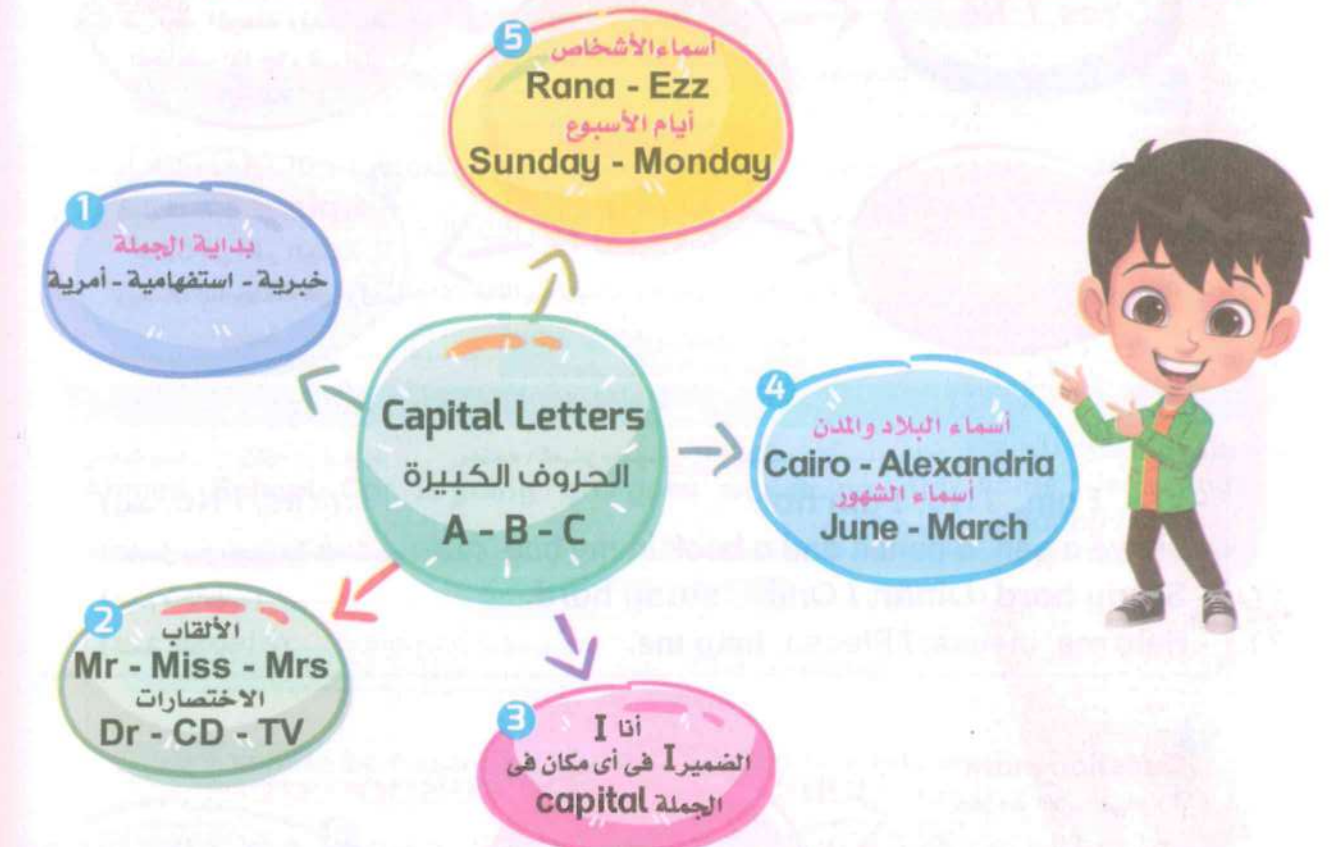
Contents



Punctuation
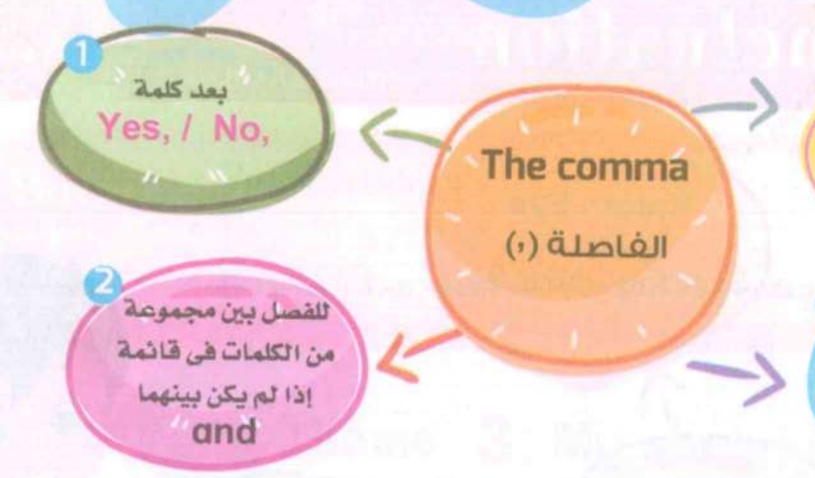
علامات الترقيم





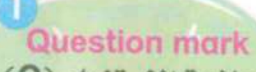
Examples:

1. I like my house. (جملة خبرية)
2. Take the medicine. (جملة أمرية)
3. What's your favorite animal? (جملة استفهامية)
4. I have a headache. (الضمير I)
5. I went to Alexandria last January. (أسماء المدن والشهور)
6. Mr Ali goes to the club on Sunday. (الألقاب وأيام الأسبوع)



Examples:

- Yes, I am. / No, I am not. (بعد Yes, / No,)
- I have a pen, a pencil and a book in my bag. (للفصل بين مجموعة كلمات فى قائمة)
- Study hard, Omar. / Omar, study hard. (اسم مخاطب)
- Help me, please. / Please, help me. (كلمة Please)



The end of the sentence
نهاية الجملة

1. Question mark
علامة الاستفهام (?)
فى نهاية السؤال

2. Full stop
النقطة (.)
فى نهاية الجملة الخبرية والأمرية

3. Exclamation mark
علامة التعجب (!)
فى حالة الترحيب أو التعجب

Examples:

1. I visited the Red Sea. (جملة خبرية)
2. Write your homework. (جملة أمرية)
3. How old are you? (جملة استفهامية)
4. Hi! Nada. (علامة تعجب)



How to write a paragraph?
كيف تكتب فقرة انشائية؟

كيفية الإجابة على سؤال (paragraph)

يطلب من التلاميذ كتابة أربعين كلمة عن موضوع من موضوعات كتاب المدرسة أو سيرة ذاتية لذلك نقدم شرح لكيفية التعامل مع هذا السؤال:

- حتى تكّون الجملة بشكل صحيح يجب أن تتعلم مكونات الجملة وترتيبها فى اللغة الإنجليزية حيث تتكون من:



أولا ترتيب الجملة

تكلمة الجملة	فعل		فاعل		
ظرف زمان - مكان / صفة / حال	ماضى بسيط / مستمر	مضارع بسيط / مستمر	شيء	مكان	اسم شخص
home / yesterday happy / well	was doing / did	is going / go / goes	Car	School	Ahmed

ثانيا صيغ الجمل المختلفة

الصيغة	المثال
فاعل + verb to be + صفة	She is happy.
فاعل + verb to be + وظيفة	Ahmed is a teacher.
فاعل + فعل + حرف جر + مكان	He went to school.
فاعل + فعل + حرف جر + زمن	We are open on Friday.
فاعل + فعل + مفعول	I love him.
فاعل + فعل + حرف جر + الساعة	I wake up at 9 o'clock.

Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words:

أكتب فقرة إنشائية من ٤٠ كلمة:

My new house

I live in a new big house. I like living here. It's much bigger than our old house. I lived in our old house since I was born. Then my father had to move to a new job. So we moved to a closer house.



Tips to answer the comprehension questions

إرشادات للإجابة عن أسئلة قطعة الفهم

أولاً: أسئلة الاختيار من متعدد (multiple-choice)

1. قد يطلب منك تحديد الفكرة الرئيسية (main idea) فى النص من خلال صيغ مثل:

- The main idea of the passage is..................
- The passage is mainly about....................

وعليك أن تختار الإجابة الصحيحة من أربعة اختيارات تُعطى لك.

كيف تجد الفكرة الرئيسية فى النص

- هى النقطة الأساسية التى يكرر الكاتب الحديث عنها.
- تكون جملة وليست سؤالاً.
- الجمل الأخرى فى النص تعطى تفاصيل ومعلومات عنها.
- غالباً تكون فى أول جملة أو آخر جملة فى النص.

لاحظ المثال الآتى

- ما باللون الأحمر هى الفكرة الرئيسية وما باللون الأزرق هى التفاصيل عنها.

Yesterday, I got a new coat. My new coat is blue and red. My coat is very nice and keeps me warm. On the back, there is a picture of a snow man. I will wear my coat to school.

2. قد يقوم واضع الامتحان بإضافة خط تحت أحد الكلمات فى جملة معينة فى القطعة ثم تجد سؤال اختيار من متعدد يقول : الكلمة الموضوع تحتها خط تشير إلى ....

- The underlined word '.......' refers to ....

ثانياً: أسئلة (open-ended) استفهامية

3. قد يطلب واضع الامتحان منك تلخيصاً (summarize) لأحد الفقرات فى النص فى جملة واحدة بالصيغة الآتية:

- Summarize the first / second / third paragraph (into one sentence).

كيف تلخص فقرة إلى جملة أو اكثر

١- حدد اسم الشخص او الشئ او الحيوان الاساسى بالفقرة المطلوب تلخيصها

٢- حدد اهم شئ يخص ذلك الشخص أو الشئ او الحيوان واستخدم اهم الافعال بالفقرة للتعبير عن ذلك وممكن استخدام افعال اخرى تؤدى نفس المعنى.

٣- استبعد الأفكار الفرعية او الغير أساسية او المعلومات الأقل أهمية

٤- أكتب الفكرة الأساسية فى حدود خمسة كلمات أو حسب ما يطلب

أمثلة مجابة

1- Summarize the first paragraph of the text in two lines.

Tourists come to Egypt to see the Pyramids, temples and other monuments. It is a wonderful visit for them. Tourists also come to see the wonderful natural world such as the desert and the Red Sea.

نتبع الخطوات السابقة:

١- الفقرة تتعلق بشكل اساسى بالسائحين **tourists**

٢- أهم ما يخصهم هو زيارة مصر والأماكن السياحية بها والأفعال التى تعبر عن ذلك **come / see /visit**

٣- استبعد المعلومات الأقل أهمية من كل جملة.

٤- قم بكتابة تلخيص الفقرة

Summary

Tourists come to Egypt to see the Pyramids and the wonderful natural world such as the Red Sea.

2- Summarize the last paragraph in one sentence of your own words.

My father enjoys playing football with his friends. He believes in doing sports and teaches us the same. He wants me to be clever at school. I want to make him feel proud of me one day.

١- أهم شخص **My father**

٢- وأهم شئ يخصه أنه يؤمن بممارسة الرياضة ويريدني أن أتفوق في دراستي.

٣- استبعد المعلومات الأقل أهمية من كل جملة.

٤ - قم بكتابة تلخيص الفقرة.

Summary

My father thinks that doing sports is very important and he wants me to be clever at school.

Specifications for Fifth Year Primary

مواصفات الصف الخامس الابتدائي ٢٠٢٢ - ٢٠٢٣

Marks: 30 | Time: One hour and a half

A- Listening (8 Marks)



1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False): (4 Marks)

An unseen listening text of about **FIFTY (50)** words followed by **FOUR (4)** separate sentences is provided. Learners are asked to write T (True) or F (False) for each sentence based on what they have heard. **(One mark each)**

2 Listen and complete: (4 Marks)

An unseen listening text of about **FIFTY (50)** words or a dialogue of **SIX (6)** exchanges followed by **FOUR (4)** separate sentences is provided. Learners are asked to listen and complete **FOUR (4)** deletions. **(One mark each)**

B- Reading (11 Marks)



3 Read and match (A) with (B): (5 Marks)

FIVE (5) premises in column **(A)** and **SIX (6)** responses in column **(B)** are provided. Learners are asked to match each premise with its suitable response. The items can be jobs and descriptions, sentence halves, words and definitions......etc. **(One mark each)**

4 Read the text and answer the questions: (6 Marks)

An unseen literary or informational text from **80** to **90** words is provided. The text should be at the appropriate difficulty level for Primary **FIVE**. Learners are asked to answer:

A. TWO (2) MCQs with **FOUR (4)** options; each dealing with **TWO** of the following reading comprehension skills: **(One mark each)**

- Identify the general idea of the text.
- Demonstrate understanding of specific details in the text.
- Determine the meaning of words and phrases in the text.

B. TWO (2) open ended questions dealing with **TWO** of the following reading comprehension skills: **(Two marks each)**

- Describe the relationship between two people, events, ideas, or pieces of information in a text.
- Make logical inferences from the text.
- Summarize the key supporting details and ideas in the text.

C- Writing (11 Marks)

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences: (4 Marks)

FOUR (4) scrambled statements (sentences and questions) with **SIX (6)** words each are provided. Learners are asked to order the words to form a correct sentence or question. **(One mark each)**

6 Punctuate the following: (2 Marks)

TWO (2) simple statements (sentence and question) of about **SIX (6)** words with **TWO (2)** missing punctuation marks each are provided (**Capital Letter / Full Stop / Question Mark / Exclamation Mark / Comma**). Learners are asked to punctuate them correctly.

(One mark each - Half a mark for each missing punctuation)

7 Write a paragraph or a biography of FORTY (40) words using the following guiding elements: (5 Marks)

Learners are asked to write a paragraph of not less than **FORTY (40)** words using **TWO (2)** given guiding elements that can be phrases, questions, fact file, tables.....etc.

(One mark for relevance of ideas – One mark for vocabulary - One mark for grammar - One mark for spelling - One mark for punctuation)



My society



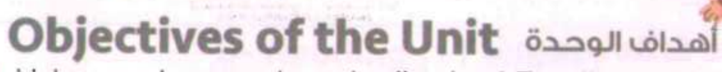
Unit 7

Homes in Egypt

المنازل فى مصر







Objectives of the Unit أهداف الوحدة

1. Listen, read, research, and write about Egyptian homes now and in Ancient Egypt.
   - يستمع الطالب ويقرأ ويقوم بعمل بحث ويكتب عن المنازل المصرية الآن وفي مصر القديمة.
2. Talk about the home and furniture.
   - يتحدث الطالب عن المنزل والأثاث.
3. Read, understand, and listen to a short dialog about different homes.
   - يقرأ الطالب ويفهم ويستمع الى حوار قصير حول منازل مختلفة.
4. Understand and use the simple past to talk about past events.
   - يفهم الطالب ويستخدم الماضي البسيط للحديث عن الأحداث الماضية.
5. Learn how to say double vowels.
   - يتعلم الطالب كيفية نطق الحروف المتحركة المضاعفة.
6. Write a simple blog about an unusual home.
   - يكتب الطالب مدونة بسيطة عن منزل غريب.
7. Research and make a presentation about an Ancient Egyptian home.
   - يعمل الطالب بحث ويقدم عرض تقديمي عن منزل مصري قديم (فى مصر القديمة).

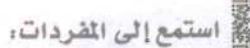






The Home

Key vocabulary



استمع إلى المفردات:







armchair كرسى ذو مسندين

bed سرير

cushion وسادة

closet دولاب / خزانة

At home فى المنزل



elevator مصعد





oven فرن



shower دش



television تليفزيون

Rooms in an apartment الغرف فى الشقة

living room	حجرة المعيشة
kitchen	مطبخ
balcony	بلكونة / شرفة
bedroom	حجرة النوم
bathroom	حمام



Other words كلمات أخرى

apartment	شقة
town	مدينة صغيرة
How long?	كم المدة؟
since	منذ
parents	الوالدين
job	وظيفة
closer	اقرب
was born	وُلد
Thanks	اشكرك
modern	حديث
space	مساحة
traditional	قديم / تقليدى
gift	هدية
fantastic	رائع
view	منظر
What about?	ماذا عن؟
lovely	جميل

Help your child learn about things at home. ساعد طفلك يتعلم عن الاشياء بالمنزل.

Unit 7 Homes in Egypt

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضِ
live	يعيش	lived
move to	ينتقل الى (يعزل)	moved to
cook	يطبخ	cooked
share	يشارك	shared
prefer	يفضل	preferred

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضِ
come in	يدخل	came in
have to	يجب أن	had to
see	يرى	saw

Study the following

1. Welcome to my new apartment! – مرحبا بكم في شقتي الجديدة!
2. Do you like living here? – هل تحب العيش هنا؟
3. How long did you live in your old apartment? – كم المدة التى عشتها في شقتك القديمة؟
4. We moved to a closer apartment. – انتقلنا إلى شقة أقرب.
5. What's better about this new apartment? – ما الشئ الافضل في هذه الشقة الجديدة؟
6. My mom says it's much easier to cook in. – تقول أمي أن الطهى اسهل بكثير (بداخل المطبخ).
7. There's more space so we can have a bigger television. – هناك مساحة أكبر لذلك يمكننا امتلاك تلفاز أكبر.
8. They were a gift from Grandma. – كانوا (الوسادات) هدية من الجدة.
9. I share a room with my sister. – أشارك غرفة مع أختي.
10. The balcony is fantastic too - what a great view! – الشرفة رائعة أيضًا - يا له من منظر رائع!
11. Where do you live? – أين تسكن (تعيش)؟
12. Do you live in a house or an apartment? – هل تعيش فى منزل ام شقة؟

Lesson 1

1 Work with a partner. Discuss: اعمل مع زميلك وناقش الاتى:

1- Where do you live? Do you live in a house or an apartment?

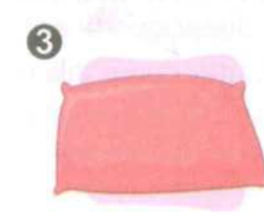
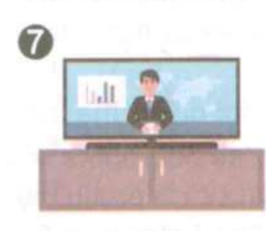
2- Describe your house or apartment. Is it big or small? Is it modern or old?

3- Say if you like your house or apartment.

----

2 Look and write: انظر واكتب:

armchair - balcony - cushion - closet
elevator - oven - shower - television

1.  elevator
2.  ----------
3.  ----------
4.  ----------
5.  ----------
6.  ----------
7.  ----------
8. ----------

3 Complete the mindmap : اكمل الخريطة الذهنية:

اكتب الأشياء الآتية عند الحجرة المناسبة لها.

armchair - bed - cushion - closet - oven - shower - television - cushion

Rooms in an apartment

- Living room: ---------- / ---------- / ----------
- Bedroom: closet / ---------- / ----------
- Kitchen: ----------
- Bathroom: ----------

4 Listen and read. Why is Fareeda happy?

استمع واقرأ. لماذا فريدة سعيدة؟



استمع إلى النص: نص الاستماع



Fareeda: Hi Dina, welcome to my new apartment! Come in!
Dina: Thanks! Do you like living here?
Fareeda: I love it! It's a great apartment! I like this part of town and it's much bigger than our old apartment.
Dina: How long did you live in your old apartment?
Fareeda: Twelve years, since I was born. Then my parents had to move to a new job, so we moved to a closer apartment.
Dina: So, what's better about this new apartment?
Fareeda: Come and see. The new kitchen is bigger, and the oven is more modern. My mom says it's much easier to cook in.
Dina: Very nice. And this is the living room?
Fareeda: Yes, as you can see, there's more space so we can have a bigger television. Look at these traditional cushions. They were a gift from Grandma.
Dina: Oh, yes! What about the bedrooms?
Fareeda: We have three bedrooms now. I share a room with my sister, Amira, but our bedroom is really big. And we have two bathrooms.
Dina: It's lovely! The balcony is fantastic too - what a great view!

5 Listen again. Number the rooms in the order you hear them:

استمع مرة اخرى ورقم الغرف بالترتيب الذى تسمعه فى النص:

bedrooms.......... kitchen ....1.... balcony .... bathrooms .... living room ....

6 Decide if the sentences are True (T) or False (F). Correct the false sentences in your notebook:

حدد ما اذا كانت الجمل صحيحة او خطأ ثم صحح الجمل الخطأ فى كراستك:

1- Fareeda prefers her old apartment. ☐
2- Fareeda's family lived in the old apartment for 12 years. ☐
3- Fareeda has her own bedroom in the new apartment. ☐
4- Dina likes the new apartment. ☐



Activities

1 Listen and complete:

استمع واكمل:

نص الاستماع اخر الكتاب

1. Fatma lives in a modern ....
2. She has three .... in the living room.
3. The .... is big.
4. She bakes bread in the ....

2 Read and match (A) with (B):

اقرأ وصل:

A	B
1 Welcome to	a. bedrooms now.
2 There's more space so we can	b. live in your old apartment?
3 Do you like	c. what a great view!
4 How long did you	d. my new apartment!
5 We have three	e. have a bigger television.
	f. living here?

3 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

1. do - live - Where - you?
....
2. were - a - from - They - Grandma - gift.
....
3. balcony - is - The - too - fantastic.
....
4. moved - apartment - to - a closer - We.
....

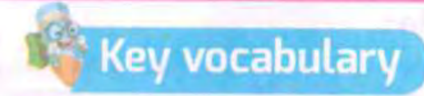
4 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

1- what about the bedrooms
....
2- reda is a clever student
....



Lesson 2 My perfect room



Key vocabulary



استمع إلى المفردات:

Adjectives & opposites الصفات وعكسها

friendly	ودود	unfriendly	غير ودود
comfortable	مريح	uncomfortable	غير مريح
lucky	محظوظ	unlucky	غير محظوظ
safe	آمن	unsafe	غير آمن
happy	سعيد	unhappy	غير سعيد
fair	عادل	unfair	غير عادل

Prepositions of place حروف الجر الخاصة بالمكان

on the right	على اليمين	in the middle of the room	فى منتصف الحجرة
on the left	على اليسار	next to	بجوار
on the wall	على الحائط/ الجدار		



In the Jungle فى الغابة

howler monkey	قرد العواء (سعدان العواء)	deep	عميق / بعيد فى عمق....
a local villager	احد سكان القرية المحليين	path	طريق



Other words كلمات أخرى

perfect	رائع / مثالى	nearby / close	قريب
poster	ملصق	jungle	غابة
dark	مظلم	heavy rain	مطر غزير
alone	وحيد	go forward	يذهب للامام
make friends	يكون صداقات	go back toward	يذهب للخلف تجاه
scientist	عالم	suddenly	فجأة
frightening	مرعب/ مخيف	indeed	بالفعل
interested in	مهتم بـ	on holiday	فى اجازة
do some research	يقوم بعمل بعض الابحاث	sculpture	تمثال
		cases	حقائب

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الافعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة			Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة		
Present مضارع		Past ماض	Present مضارع		Past ماض
die	يموت	died	sit	يجلس	sat
miss	يفتقد / يفوت	missed	eat	يأكل	ate
smile	يبتسم	smiled	leave	يغادر	left
try	يحاول	tried	go	يذهب	went
visit	يزور	visited	meet	يقابل	met
love	يحب	loved	tell	يخبر	told
look up	ينظر لاعلى	looked up	set out	يبدأ رحلة	set out
shout	يصرخ	shouted	know	يعرف	knew
carry	يحمل	carried	wear	يرتدى	wore
create	ينشئ	created	come	يأتى	came

Definitions تعريفات

unfriendly	ودود	not kind to someone
uncomfortable	غير مريح	something that doesn't feel nice to sit on or wear on your body
unlucky	غير محظوظ	something bad happens to you without a reason
unsafe	غير آمن	dangerous
unhappy	غير سعيد	sad
unfair	غير عادل	something that happens that isn't morally right or fair

Study the following

1. On the right, there is my bed with a desk next to it.
   - على اليمين يوجد سريري وبجانبه مكتب.
2. On the wall, there are lots of posters of animals.
   - على الحائط يوجد الكثير من الملصقات الخاصة بالحيوانات.
3. My uncle is a scientist and loves animals. - عمي عالم وهو يحب الحيوانات.
4. The people were very friendly and helped him with his work.
   - كان الناس ودودين للغاية وساعدوه في عمله.
5. He was very interested in howler monkeys. - كان مهتمًا جدًا بقرود العواء.
6. He knew he was very close to them. - كان يعلم أنه قريب جدًا منهم.
7. It was very heavy rain. - كان هناك أمطار غزيرة جدا.
8. There was water everywhere and he couldn't see the path to go forward or back. - كان هناك ماء في كل مكان ولم يستطع رؤية الطريق للمضي قدمًا أو للخلف.
9. Suddenly, lots of water came toward him. - فجأة جاء الكثير من الماء نحوه.
10. He was very frightened. - كان خائفا جدا.
11. My uncle was very happy indeed! - كان عمي سعيدا جدا حقا!
12. He's very unlucky because he misses the bus.
   - إنه غير محظوظ للغاية لأنه لم يلحق الاتوبيس.
13. She's very unhappy- she never smiles or tries to make friends.
   - إنها غير سعيدة للغاية - فهي لا تبتسم أبدًا أو تحاول تكوين صداقات.
14. She created a fantastic sculpture from the garbage.
   - صنعت تمثالًا رائعًا من القمامة.
15. We carried our heavy cases to the car. - حملنا حقائبنا الثقيلة إلى السيارة.

Grammar قواعد لغوية

1 The past simple tense زمن الماضي البسيط

نستخدم زمن الماضي البسيط

- للتعبير عن حدث تم فى الماضى وانتهى.
- للتعبير عن فعل حدث مرة واحدة فى الماضى أو فعل حدث عدة مرات فى الماضى أو حدث كان حقيقة لفترة من الوقت فى الماضى.

- I visited her house when I was five.
- We went to my aunt's house at the beach every summer.

- يتكون زمن الماضى البسيط من:

باقى الجملة + فعل فى التصريف الثانى + فاعل (كل الضمائر).

- I met her in Zagazig two years ago.

- تنقسم الافعال الى افعال منتظمة وافعال غير منتظمة:

اولا: الافعال المنتظمة: هى الافعال التى نضيف اليها (ed) فى الماضى:

want → wanted	help → helped

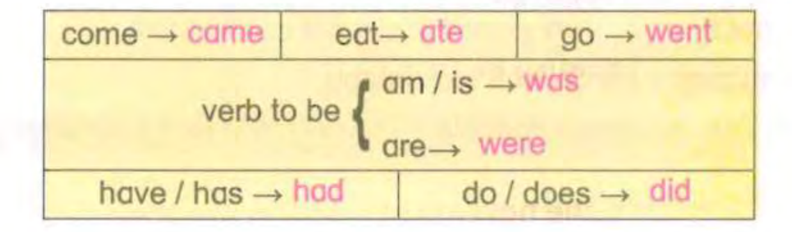
- إذا انتهى الفعل المنتظم بحرف (e) نضيف اليه (d) فقط فى الماضى:

die → died	like → liked

- وإذا انتهى بحرف (y) يسبقه حرف ساكن نحذف حرف (y) ونضيف (ied):

study → studied	carry → carried

ثانيا: الافعال غير المنتظمة: وهى الافعال التى لا يضاف اليها (ed) فى الماضى:



come → came	eat → ate	go → went
verb to be	am / is → was are → were	
have / has → had	do / does → did	

2 Negative النفى

- لنفى الفعل فى الماضى البسيط نستخدم:

مصدر الفعل .didn't + inf + فاعل

فعل فى التصريف الثانى + never + فاعل

- He didn't go to the park.
- He never went to the park.

3 Question السؤال

◉ وفى السؤال نستخدم:

? مصدر الفعل .inf + فاعل + did + كلمة استفهام

- When did people start to live in Egypt?

◉ أو ممكن ان نبدا السؤال بـ Did وتكون الاجابة No, or Yes,

- Did they write the homework?
- Yes, they did. اجابة مثبتة No, they didn't. اجابة فى النفى

4 Key words الكلمات الدالة

yesterday – last (week – month – year) – once – in the past – ago – in ancient times – in + year (in 2020)

The prefix (un-) البادئة (un-)

◉ هناك بعض المقاطع التى تسمى بادئات والتى يمكن اضافتها اول بعض الكلمات حيث تغير المعنى مثال البادئة (un-) والتى تعطى النفى من الكلمة:

happy → unhappy	safe → unsafe

◉ لاحظ:

- unhappy = not happy uncomfortable = not comfortable
- He looks unhappy = He doesn't look happy.
- The armchair is very uncomfortable =The armchair isn't comfortable.

1 Read about the bedroom : اقرا عن غرفة النوم:

I love my bedroom. I share it with my sister. On the right, there is my bed with a desk next to it. On the left, there is my sister's bed. In the middle of the room, there is an armchair with two cushions and a big closet. On the wall, there are lots of posters of animals.

2 Listen to your partner and draw their perfect bedroom:

استمع الى زميلك وارسم غرفة نومهم المثالية:

Language focus

Use these phrases when telling your partner where things are:

استخدم هذه العبارات لتخبر زميلك بمكان الأشياء:

On the right ..... On the left ..... In the middle of the room .....
On the wall ....
On the right, there is an armchair. ....
....

3 Match the words to their meanings: صل الكلمات بمعانيها:

1. unfriendly
2. uncomfortable
3. unlucky
4. unsafe
5. unhappy
6. unfair

a. sad
b. dangerous
c. something that doesn't feel nice to sit on or wear on your body
d. something that happens that isn't morally right or fair
e. something bad happens to you without a reason
f. not kind to someone

4 Complete the sentences with the words in Exercise 3 :

اكمل الجمل بكلمات من التمرين السابق:

1- His cat died last week. He was very ....
2- I never sit in that green armchair - it's very ....
3- Don't go down the street in the dark alone - it's very ....
4- That's very .... - you ate everything and didn't leave any for us!
5- He's very .... because he missed the bus.
6- She's very .... - she never smiles or tries to make friends.

5 Underline the past simple verbs in the text. Mark the regular verbs (R) and the irregular verbs (I):

ضع خط تحت الافعال التى فى الماضى البسيط فى النص. اكتب (R) عند الافعال المنتظمة واكتب (I) عند الافعال غير المنتظمة،


استمع إلى النص:

My uncle is a scientist[1] and loves animals. When he was younger, he traveled a lot in South America[2] for work. He loved it there because the people were very friendly[3] and helped him with his work. Then, about three years ago, something frightening[4] happened to him and he was lucky[5] he lived to tell me about it!

He was very interested in[6] howler monkeys[7] and wanted to do some research into their family groups. A local villager[8] told him where there was a howler monkey family nearby and he was very happy. But the villager also said, "Tomorrow, we are going to have a lot of rain so it could be unsafe[9]."

My uncle set out to look for the howler monkey family and soon he was deep in the jungle. He could hear the monkeys and he looked up. He knew he was very close to[10] them. Then the rain started. It was very heavy rain[11]. Soon, there was water everywhere and he couldn't see the path[12] to go forward or back.

Suddenly, lots of water came toward him and carried him away down to the river. He was very frightened.

Suddenly, he saw a hand and someone was shouting. It was the villager. He took Uncle's hand and said, "Now you are safe!" My uncle was very happy indeed[13]!

Arabic Meaning

١- عالم
٢- امريكا الجنوبية
٣- ودودين
٤- مخيف/مرعب
٥- محظوظ
٦- مهتم بـ
٧- قرود العواء
٨- احد سكان القرية المحليين
٩- غير امن
١٠- قريب لـ
١١- مطر غزير
١٢- طريق
١٣- بالفعل


Howler monkeys in the jungle

6 Complete the sentences with the verbs in brackets in the past simple:

اكمل الجمل باستخدام الافعال التى بين الاقواس بصيغة الماضى البسيط،

1- When we went to Sharm El-Sheikh on holiday, we .... (meet) some new friends.
2- She .... (create) a fantastic sculpture from the garbage.
3- We .... (carry) our heavy cases to the car.
4- His grandma .... (go) to Aswan last year.
5- Yesterday, my cousin .... (come) to visit us.



7 Make the sentences negative:

كون النفى من الجمل،

1- He traveled all over Egypt. He didn't travel all over Egypt.
2- He ate Om Ali in Tanta. ....
3- It rained yesterday. ....
4- They came here by airplane. ....

Test Yourself ? اختبر نفسك

التمرين القادم ليس من مواصفات الامتحان ولكنه لتدريب الطالب على القواعد والكلمات:

Choose the correct answer from a,b, c or d:

1. I .... Mr Ahmed yesterday.
a meet b meets c met d meeting

2. She .... eat ice cream two days ago.
a don't b didn't c isn't d doesn't

3. .... they travel to Aswan last week?
a Did b Do c Does d Are

4. I was tired, so my brother .... my bag.
a carries b carry c carrying d carried

5. Reem didn't .... the school bus.
a misses b miss c missed d missing

Activities



1 Read and match (A) with (B): اقرأ وصل:

A	B
1 My bedroom is on	a. in howler monkeys.
2 Unfriendly	b. posters of animals.
3 He was very interested	c. the right.
4 We carried our heavy	d. to the television.
5 The bed is next	e. cases to the car.
	f. not kind to someone.

2 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

Amr went to the zoo yesterday. He went with his family. They saw a lot of animals. They saw the howler monkeys, lions and elephants. I tried to feed the animals. Mom told me it was unsafe to do this. Some children were **unfriendly** to the animals so dad was angry. He told them to stop hurting the animals. My sister was frightened when she saw the lion. We had lunch at the zoo. It was a nice day.



A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The underlined word "**unfriendly**" means ....
   a sad   b dangerous   c not kind   d lucky
2. The text is about visiting the ....
   a school   b zoo   c park   d desert

B- Answer the following questions:

3. Why was dad angry?
....
4. What did Amr try to do?
....

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك فى التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة.

3 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

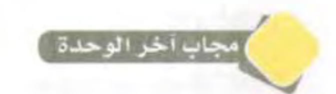
أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

1. Egypt – traveled - He - all - over.
....
2. are - lots - of - posters - There - of animals.
....
3. grandma - year - Aswan - went - to - last - His.
....
4. uncle - loves - is a scientist - My - and - animals.
....

4 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

1- i met Miss manar yesterday.
....
2- how did you go to school
....

5 Write a paragraph of Forty (40) words using the following guiding elements: اكتب فقرة إنشائية من ٤٠ كلمة عن:



In the jungle

saw- unsafe



....
....
....
....
....



Ancient Egyptian Homes



Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات:



mud bricks	الطوب اللبن (طوب من الطين)	pot	إناء
roof	سطح المنزل	oven	فرن
reed mat	حصيرة من البوص	sleeping area	منطقة النوم
gate	بوابة		



Other words كلمات أخرى

Ancient Egypt	مصر القديمة	the same	نفس الشيء
the Nile	نهر النيل	outside	خارج
drinking	الشرب	crops	محاصيل
cooking	الطبخ	wooden box	صندوق خشبي
washing	الغسيل / الغُسل	floor	طابق / دور في مبنى
strong	قوى	the countryside	الريف
cool	بارد (جو لطيف)	chicken	دجاجة
flat	مسطح / مستو	banks of the river	ضفاف النهر
hot nights	ليالى حارة	by	بجوار
furniture	أثاث	special style	نمط خاص
different from	مختلف عن	wind	رياح
papyrus	البردى	all right	بخير
insects	حشرات	near	قريب من - بالقرب من

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
use	يستخدم	used
paint	يطلى / يدهن	painted
cook	يطبخ / يطهو	cooked
relax	يسترخى	relaxed
cover	يغطى	covered
save	يوفر / يدخر	saved
join	يربط	joined
store	يخزن	stored

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
make	يجعل / يصنع	made
keep	يحافظ على / يربى	kept
have	يملك	had
sleep	ينام	slept
build	يبنى	built
grow	ينمو / يزرع	grew
blow	يهب (للرياح)	blew
feel	يشعر	felt
fall	يسقط	fell

Study the following

1. In Ancient Egypt, many people made their homes near the Nile.
   - في مصر القديمة بنى الكثير من الناس منازلهم بالقرب من النيل.
2. They used its water for drinking, cooking, and washing.
   - استخدموا مياه النيل للشرب والطبخ والغسيل.
3. They also used mud from the river to make bricks for their houses.
   - كما استخدموا طين من النهر لصنع الطوب لمنازلهم.
4. The mud bricks made very strong walls. - صنع الطوب اللبن جدرانًا (حوائط) قوية جدًا.
5. Ancient Egyptians wanted to keep their homes cool.
   - أراد المصريون القدماء الحفاظ على برودة منازلهم.
6. Some people also painted their homes white to make them cooler.
   - قام بعض الناس أيضًا بطلاء منازلهم باللون الأبيض لجعلها أكثر برودة.
7. Ancient Egyptian homes all had flat roofs, which were the coolest part of the house.
   - كانت جميع المنازل المصرية القديمة ذات أسطح مستوية ، والتي كانت اكثر جزء بارد فى المنزل.

8 The furniture in Ancient Egyptian homes was very different from today.

- كان الأثاث في المنازل المصرية القديمة مختلفًا تمامًا عن وقتنا الحالى.

9 There were reed mats to sit and sleep on.

- كانت هناك حصائر من البوص للجلوس والنوم عليها.

10 They used papyrus to cover the windows and doors.

- استخدموا ورق البردي لتغطية النوافذ والأبواب.

11 In every home, there were large pots and baskets for storing crops and wooden boxes for clothes.

- في كل منزل ، كان هناك أواني وسلال كبيرة لتخزين المحاصيل وصناديق خشبية للملابس.

12 Not many people had beds or chairs.

- لم يكن لدى الكثير من الناس أسرة أو كراسي.

13 They grew vegetables and kept chickens there.

- كانوا يزرعون الخضار ويربون الدجاج هناك.

1 Work with a partner. Discuss:

اعمل مع زميلك وناقش:

1- What do you think Ancient Egyptian homes were like? ________________

2- Where did people build their homes in Ancient Egypt? ________________

3- What did people use to build their homes? ________________

2 Read the passage. Decide if the sentences are True (T) or False (F). Correct the false ones in your notebook:

اقرأ النص. حدد ما اذا كانت الجمل صحيحة أو خطأ ثم صحح الجمل الخطأ فى كراستك:

استمع إلى النص:

In Ancient Egypt[1], many people made their homes near the Nile. They used its water for drinking, cooking, and washing. They also used mud from the river to make bricks for their houses. The mud bricks[2] made very strong walls.

Ancient Egyptians wanted to keep[3] their homes cool[4]. The mud bricks helped do this. Some people also painted their homes white to make them cooler. Ancient Egyptian homes all had flat roofs[5], which were the coolest part of the house. Families often cooked, ate, relaxed[6], and slept there on hot nights.

The furniture[7] in Ancient Egyptian homes was very different from today.

Arabic Meaning

١- مصر القديمة
٢- الطوب اللبن
٣- يحافظ على
٤- بارد
٥- اسطح مستوية
٦- استرخوا
٧- أثاث

There were reed mats[8] to sit and sleep on. They used papyrus[9] to cover the windows and doors. This kept the insects outside. In every home, there were large pots and baskets for storing[10] crops and wooden boxes for clothes. Not many people had beds or chairs.

In cities, people lived very close together, and so they built their houses taller, with two floors[11]. This saved space[12] so they could build more houses. City houses joined together, just like today. In the countryside, houses usually only had one floor, and they also had a garden. They grew vegetables and kept chickens there.

٨- حصير من البوص
٩- البردى
١٠- تخزين
١١- طابقان/دوران
١٢- مساحة

1- A lot of people made their homes near the Nile. ☐

2- In Ancient Egypt, people used water from the Red Sea for drinking. ☐

3- The mud bricks helped Ancient Egyptians to keep their homes cool. ☐

4- The furniture in Ancient Egyptian homes wasn't the same as today. ☐

5- The Ancient Egyptians stored their clothes in metal boxes. ☐

6- The houses in cities usually had one floor only. ☐

3 Read and listen to the poem:

اقرأ واستمع الى القصيدة:

استمع إلى النص:

By the banks of the ancient River Nile,
Egyptian houses had a special style:
Dark inside with small windows,
Reed mats on the roof where the cool wind blows,
Outside under the stars at night,
One family together, feeling all right.
Mud from the Nile made their walls
Safe and strong, and never to fall.



4 Listen and write the labels on the ancient Egyptian house:

استمع واكتب الاشياء داخل المنزل المصرى القديم:

gate - oven - pot - roof - reed mat - sleeping area

1. sleeping area
2. ....
3. ....
4. ....
5. ....
6. ....



Activities

1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False): استمع واكتب (صواب) أو (خطأ)

نص الاستماع اخر الكتاب

1. Ancient Egyptians used mud bricks to build their houses.
2. The bedroom was the coolest part in the house.
3. Ancient Egyptians used papyrus to cook.
4. They slept on reed mats.

2 Read and match (A) with (B): اقرأ وصل:

A	B
1 Many people used the Nile	a. their homes white to make them cooler.
2 The mud bricks made	b. for drinking and washing.
3 Ancient Egyptian homes all	c. the Nile.
4 In the countryside,	d. very strong walls.
5 Some people also painted	e. houses usually only had one floor.
	f. had flat roofs.

3 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

1. many - people - beds - had - Not - or chairs.

----

2. their - homes - did - people - What - use - to build?

----

3. had - two - in cities - floors - The houses.

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك فى التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة.

4. did - build - their - Where - homes - people?

----

5. painted - their - People - white - homes.

----

6. grew - chickens - and - They - kept - vegetables.

----

4 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

1- Ancient egyptians kept their homes cool

2- what did they use papyrus for

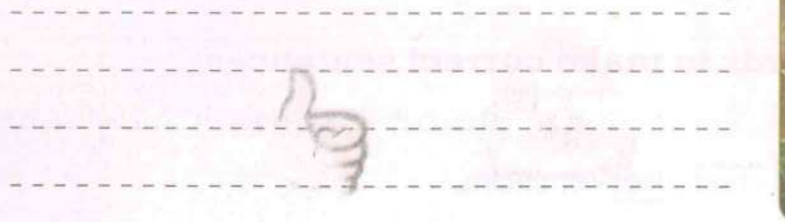
----

5 Write a paragraph of Forty (40) words using the following guiding elements: اكتب فقرة إنشائية من ٤٠ كلمة عن:



Homes in Ancient Egypt

mud bricks - roofs







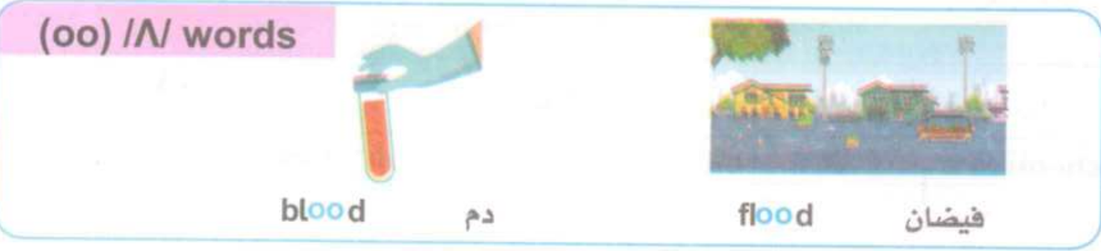
Pronunciation & Math

استمع إلى المفردات:









Unit 7 Homes in Egypt

◉ ندرس فى هذا الدرس نطق الحروف المتحركة المضاعفة (oo) / (ee) فى بعض الكلمات:

- حيث ينطق حرفى (ee) مثل نطق صوت (e) الممتد / long e / i: لكن حرفى (oo) ممكن ان ينطقا بثلاث طرق كما يلى:

١- مثل صوت (o) ممتد النطق long o مثل الرمز الصوتى /uː/ كما فى الكلمات: spoon - roof - school - pool

٢- مثل الرمز الصوتى /ʊ/ كما فى الكلمات: wood - book - cook

٣- مثل الرمز الصوتى /ʌ/ كما فى الكلمات: flood - blood

1 Write the double vowel words with ee or oo:

اكتب الحروف المتحركة المضاعفة ee أو oo:

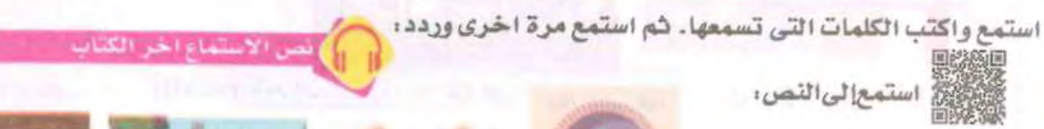


❶ tr_ ee _ ❷ sp _ _ _ _ _ _ ❸ sh _ _ _ _ _ _ ❹ r _ _ _ _ _ _

❺ s _ _ _ _ _ _ ❻ s _ _ _ _ _ _ ❼ q _ _ _ _ _ _ ❽ p _ _ _ _ _ _

2 Listen and write the words you hear. Then listen again and repeat:

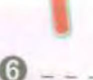
استمع واكتب الكلمات التى تسمعها. ثم استمع مرة اخرى وردد:



استمع إلى النص:





❶ wood ❷ _ _ _ _ _ _ ❸ _ _ _ _ _ _ ❹ _ _ _ _ _ _ ❺ _ _ _ _ _ _ ❻ _ _ _ _ _ _

3 Read. Put the oo words in the correct column in the table. Then listen and check:

اقرأ وضع الكلمات التى تحتوى على (oo) فى العمود الصحيح فى الجدول ثم استمع وتاكد:

school - book - flood - smooth - cook - blood - food - zoo - wood - wool - noon - spoon - pool - good

/uː/	/ʊ/	/ʌ/
school	book	flood
....	....	....
....	....	....



Decimals

- ندرس فى هذا الدرس تقريب العدد العشرى:

- يجب اولا ان نعرف ونحدد العدد العشرى . انظر إلى الآتى: 13.95

- فى العدد السابق يمثل الرقم الذى يأتى بعد العلامة العشرية (.) العدد العشرى: 0.95

1	3	.	9	5
tens	units	decimal points	tenths (1/10)	hundredths (1/100)
			digits after the decimal point يمثل هذا الجزء الارقام بعد العلامة العشرية	
عشرات	آحاد	علامة عشرية	جزء من عشرة	جزء من مائة

1 Circle the digits after the decimal point : ضع دائرة حول الارقام التى تاتى بعد العلامة العشرية

283.7   7   8.37   3.126   0.006

◉ والآن ندرس تقريب العدد بعد العلامة العشرية لاقرب رقم صحيح حيث يجعل ذلك العدد اصغر واسهل للاستخدام.

◉ اذا كان الرقم الذى يمثل جزء من عشرة (الذى ياتى بعد العلامة العشرية مباشرة) يساوى أو يزيد عن رقم (5) نقوم بتقريب الرقم لاقرب رقم اكبر من الرقم السابق.

13.95 becomes 14

◉ لاحظ فى العدد السابق رقم (9) اكبر من (5) اذا تصبح ال (9) واحد صحيح ونضيفها على (13) ليصبح الرقم (14) أما اذا كان الرقم الذى يمثل جزء من عشرة اقل من (5) اذا نقرب العدد لاصغر عدد صحيح من العدد السابق

134.3 becomes 134

◉ لاحظ فى العدد السابق رقم (3) اصغر من (5) اذا تصبح ال (3) صفر ويقرب للرقم الصحيح الاصغر من (134.3) ليصبح الرقم (134).

2 Round the decimal numbers to the nearest whole number:

قرب الأعداد العشرية إلى أقرب عدد صحيح

221.22	45.67	678.92	56.88	34.2	189.37	3.56
....	....	....	....	....	....	....



LESSON 5 ★ Writing

Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات:

unusual homes	منازل غريبة	awesome	رائع
blogging	التدوين فى مدونة	boring	ممل
ecological	بيئى / صديق للبيئة	funny	مضحك
farmhouse	منزل ريفى	brilliant	رائع
landscape	منظر طبيعى	cool	جميل
awful	فظيع	friendly	ودود
annoying	مزعج	interesting	شيق

Other words كلمات أخرى

week	اسبوع	at the top	على القمة / فى اعلى
topic	موضوع	light	ضوء
architect	مهندس معمارى	local people	اشخاص / سكان محليون
Netherlands	هولندا	farm	مزرعة
online	عبر / على الانترنت	field	حقل
upside down	مقلوب رأسا على عقب	heat	حرارة
actually	فعليا / بالفعل	energy	طاقة
modern	حديث		

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضى
change	يغير	changed
work	يعمل	worked
fit	يلائم/ يناسب	fitted

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضى
write	يكتب	wrote
take	يأخذ	took
find	يجد	found
get	يحصل على	got



Definitions تعريفات

blogging	التدوين فى مدونة	to write about something in an online blog.
ecological	بيئى/صديق للبيئة	related to living thing and their environments

Study the following

1. I like blogging about different things.
– أنا أحب التدوين عن أشياء مختلفة.
2. This week I'm writing about unusual homes.
– أكتب هذا الأسبوع عن منازل غريبة.
3. This topic is very interesting for me.
– هذا الموضوع مثير جدا للاهتمام بالنسبة لي.
4. I found this unusual house in the Netherlands online.
– لقد وجدت هذا المنزل الغريب في هولندا على الإنترنت.
5. It is actually an old farmhouse which people are changing to make it modern.
– إنه في الواقع منزل ريفى قديم يغيره الناس ليجعلوه حديث.
6. Local people like it because it fits in very well with the local landscape.
– يحبه السكان المحليون لأنه يتلاءم جيدًا مع المناظر الطبيعية المحلية.
7. It is also very ecological because they use air, water, and sun to heat and make energy for the house.
– كما أنه صديق للبيئة لأنه يستخدم الهواء والماء والشمس للتدفئة وتوليد الطاقة للمنزل.
8. What do you think of it?
– ما رايك في ذلك؟
9. Do you like it?
– هل أحببت ذلك؟

1 Read Dalida's blog and answer her question : اقرأ مدونة داليدا واجب عن سؤالها:

Dalida BLOG HOME ABOUT ME LINKS ARCHIVE

Wednesday, 8th November

استمع إلى النص:



Upside down house in the Netherlands

Hi! My name's Dalida and I like blogging(1) about different things. This week I'm writing about unusual(2) homes. This topic(3) is very interesting for me because my mom's an architect(4), so she sometimes takes me to see some brilliant places(5). It's really awesome! I found this unusual house in the Netherlands(6) online(7) - it's upside down(8)! It is actually(9) an old farmhouse which people are changing to make it modern. This works very well because all the windows are at the top, so you get a lot of light(10). Local people like it because it fits(11) in very well with the local landscape(12), which is farms and fields. It is also very ecological(13) because they use air, water, and sun to heat and make energy for the house. That's so cool! What do you think of it? Do you like it?

Arabic Meaning

١-التدوين
٢-غريب
٣-موضوع
٤-مهندس معمارى
٥-اماكن رائعة
٦-هولندا
٧-عبر الانترنت
٨-مقلوب راسا على عقب
٩-فعليا
١٠-ضوء
١١-يلاءم/ يناسب
١٢-منظر طبيعى
١٣-صديق للبيئة

2 Decide if the sentences about Dalida's blog are True (T) or False (F)

حدد إذا كانت الجمل الآتية عن مدونة داليدا صح أو خطأ :

1. The house is in France. ☐
2. It's in a city. ☐
3. Dalida visited the house. ☐
4. It's ecologically friendly. ☐

Tip! Writing a blog

ارشادات كتابة مدونة على الإنترنت:

1- Write about something you like and enjoy.
2- Write to your readers as if you are speaking to them. Use contractions (I'm, it's) and words like "awesome" and "cool".
3- Use exclamation marks (!) and emojis:
4- Give your opinion and invite your readers to give theirs.
5- Check that your spelling is correct.

3 Using adjectives in a blog makes it interesting. Sort the adjectives into positive and negative adjectives:

يضفي استخدام الصفات تشويقا للمدونة. صنف الصفات إلى ايجابية وسلبية:

awful - annoying - awesome - boring - funny - brilliant - cool - friendly - interesting

Positive	Negative
funny	awful

4 Write your blog. Find an unusual house or home and write about it. Write 30-40 words:

اكتب مدونتك. أوجد منزلًا أو بيتًا غريب. واكتب عنه من ٣٠ إلى ٤٠ كلمة:

Write:

- where it is and give some information about it.
- what you think about it and why.
- ask the readers about their opinion.





Activities

1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False): استمع واكتب (صواب) أو (خطأ)

نص الاستماع اخر الكتاب

1. Dalia's uncle is an architect. ☐
2. Dalia's uncle lives in an old farmhouse. ☐
3. Dalia played with the goats. ☐
4. Dalia's uncle grows wheat and tomatoes. ☐

2 Read and match (A) with (B): اقرأ وصل:

A	B
1 I like blogging about	a. about unusual homes.
2 I'm writing	b. like it?
3 My mom's	c. interesting for me.
4 Do you	d. upside down.
5 This topic is very	e. an architect.
	f. different things.

3 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملا صحيحة:

1. is - also - ecological - very - It.

---

2. think - do - you - What - of - it?

---

3. writing - about - I'm - homes - unusual.

---

4. found - in - the Netherlands - this unusual - I - house

----

5. like - Do - it - you?

----

6. interesting - is - The topic - for me - very.

----

4 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

1- it's in a city

2- where is it

----

5 Write a paragraph of Forty (40) words using the following guiding elements: اكتب فقرة إنشائية من ٤٠ كلمة عن:



The upside down house

farmhouse - ecological





Review



Key vocabulary

At home في المنزل





armchair	bed	cushion	closet
كرسى ذو مسندين	سرير	وسادة	دولاب / خزانة











elevator	shower	television	oven
مصعد	دش	تليفزيون	فرن

mud bricks	الطوب اللبن
roof	سطح المنزل
reed mat	حصيرة من البوص
gate	بوابة
unusual homes	منازل غريبة
blogging	التدوين فى مدونة
ecological	بيئي / صديق للبيئة
farmhouse	منزل ريفي
landscape	منظر طبيعي
awful	فظيع

annoying	مزعج
oven	فرن
sleeping area	منطقة النوم
awesome	رائع
boring	ممل
funny	مضحك
brilliant	رائع
cool	جميل
friendly	ودود
interesting	شيق

In the Jungle فى الغابة



howler monkey	قرد العواء
a local villager	احد سكان القرى المحليين

deep	عميق
path	طريق

Adjectives & opposites الصفات وعكسها

friendly	ودود	unfriendly	غير ودود
comfortable	مريح	uncomfortable	غير مريح
lucky	محظوظ	unlucky	غير محظوظ
safe	آمن	unsafe	غير آمن
happy	سعيد	unhappy	غير سعيد
fair	عادل	unfair	غير عادل

Prepositions of place حروف الجر الخاصة بالمكان



on the right	على اليمين
on the left	على اليسار
on the wall	على الحائط/ الجدار
in the middle of the room	فى منتصف الحجرة
next to	بجوار

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
live	يعيش	lived
move to	ينتقل إلى (يعزل)	moved to
share	يشارك	shared
die	يموت	died
miss	يفتقد / يفوت	missed
smile	يبتسم	smiled
try	يحاول	tried
carry	يحمل	carried
create	ينشئ	created
use	يستخدم	used
cook	يطبخ / يطهو	cooked
save	يوفر / يدخر	saved
work	يعمل	worked
fit	يلائم / يناسب	fitted

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
see	يرى	saw
sit	يجلس	sat
eat	يأكل	ate
leave	يغادر	left
meet	يقابل	met
tell	يخبر	told
set out	يبدأ رحلة	set out
keep	يحافظ على / يربى	kept
sleep	ينام	slept
build	يبنى	built
grow	ينمو / يزرع	grew
blow	يهب (للرياح)	blew
feel	يشعر	felt
fall	يسقط	fell
write	يكتب	wrote

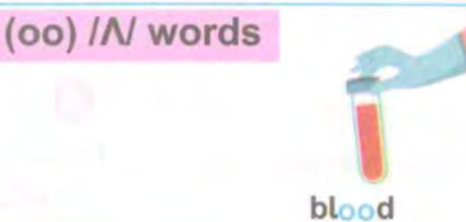








(oo) /ʌ/ words



blood دم



flood فيضان

Grammar قواعد لغوية

1 نستخدم زمن الماضى البسيط

The past simple tense زمن الماضى البسيط

◉ للتعبير عن حدث تم فى الماضى وانتهى.

- I visited her house when I was five

◉ يتكون الزمن الماضى البسيط من:

باقى الجملة + فعل فى التصريف الثانى + فاعل (كل الضمائر).

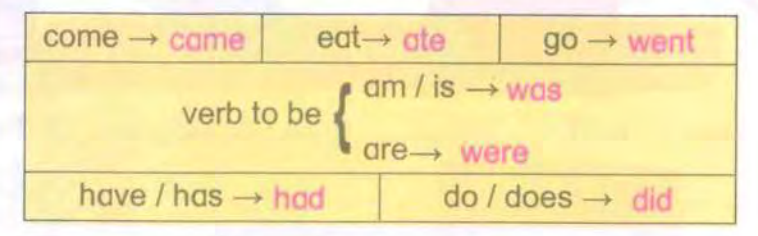
- I met her in Cairo three years ago.

◉ تنقسم الافعال الى افعال منتظمة وافعال غير منتظمة :

اولا : الافعال المنتظمة : هى الافعال التى نضيف اليها (ed) فى الماضى:

want → wanted	help → helped

ثانيا : الافعال غير المنتظمة : وهى الافعال التى لا يضاف اليها (ed) فى الماضى:



come → came	eat → ate	go → went
verb to be { am / is → was ; are → were }		
have / has → had	do / does → did	

2 Negative النفى

◉ لنفى الفعل فى الماضى البسيط نستخدم:

مصدر الفعل .inf + didn't + فاعل

فعل فى التصريف الثانى + never + فاعل

- He didn't go to the park. - He never went to the park.

3 Question السؤال

◉ وفى السؤال نستخدم:

? مصدر الفعل .inf + فاعل + did + كلمة استفهام

- When did people start to live in Egypt?

◉ أو ممكن ان نبدا السؤال بـ: Did وتكون الاجابة ,No, or Yes:

- Did they write the homework?
- Yes, they did. اجابة مثبتة No, they didn't. اجابة فى النفى

4 Key words الكلمات الدالة



yesterday – last (week – month – year) – once – in the past – ago – in ancient times – in + year (in 2020)



مهارات الكتابة

Write a paragraph of Forty (40) words:

Answers to Paragraphs

Lesson 2 — In the jungle



1. I went to the jungle with my father yesterday. My father is a scientist. He did some research on howler monkeys. We saw many animals in the jungle. It's not safe to go to the jungle alone. I enjoyed my day.

Lesson 3 — Homes in Ancient Egypt



2. Ancient Egyptians used mud bricks to build their homes. They used mud from the river to make mud bricks. The mud bricks made very strong walls. They helped to keep the homes cool, too. Ancient Egyptian homes all had flat roofs, which were the coolest part of the house.

Lesson 5 — The upside down house



3. I love reading very much. I read about unusual houses. One of these houses is the upside down house. It is an old farmhouse. People want to make it modern. Local people like this house because it fits with the local landscape. The house is very ecological.

Activity Unit 7 — Your home



4. I live in an apartment. There are five rooms in the apartment. There is a television in the living room. We cook food in the kitchen. The bathroom is next to the kitchen. There is a big balcony in my apartment.

A- Listening

نص الاستماع اخر الكتاب

1 Listen and choose the correct answer: استمع وأختر:

1. My uncle is a .... (farmer - teacher - vet)
2. He has .... children . (one - four- two)

B- Language Functions

2 Read and complete the dialog with the words below: أقرأ وأكمل:

apartment -Twenty - live

A : Where do you- ?

B : I live in an - .

A : How long did you live in your apartment?

B : - - - - - - - - - - - - - years, since I was born.

C- Reading Comprehension

3 Read and choose the correct answer: اقرأ واختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

Hello, I'm Magdy. I'm 15 years old. My father has a farm. My brother and I play on our farm on the weekends.We have a big house on the farm.There are four rooms in our house. I love my bedroom. I share it with my brother. We are a happy family.

Choose the correct answer:

1. Magdy is .... years old. (five - fifteen - fifty)
2. My father has a .... (farm - garden - field)
3. There are .... rooms in our house. (three - four - six)
4. We are a .... family. (nice - sad - happy)
5. I love my .... (living room - bathroom - bedroom)

D- Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة

1. I visited his house when I................................five.
   a was b am c are
2. .... the left, there is my sister's bed.
   a In b At c On
3. On the wall , there are lots of .... of animals.
   a boxes b pens c posters
4. His cat died last week.He was very ....
   a unhappy b happy c nice
5. I .... her in Cairo two years ago.
   a meet b met c meets

E- The Reader

5 Choose the correct answer : اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. Ramy and Malak are playing in the ....
   a park b yard c farm
2. They found a .... of a dinosaur.
   a tail b skeleton c beak

F- Writing

6 Write a short paragraph of Four (4) sentences about:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من ٤ جمل عن:

Your apartment

- -
- -
- -
- -
- -



Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك فى التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة.

on Unit 7 Activity

1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False): استمع واكتب (صواب) أو (خطأ)

نص الاستماع اخر الكتاب

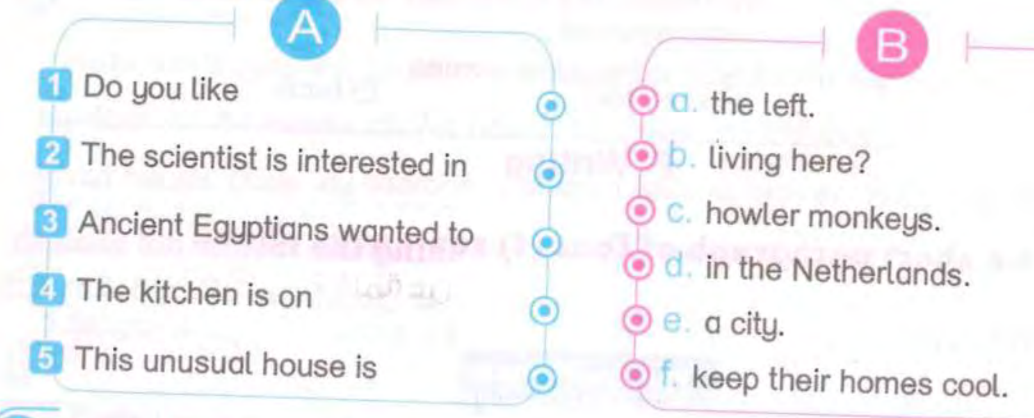
1. Ahmed lives in a small house.
2. Ahmed lives with his parents and his sister Fatma.
3. Ahmed's bedroom is white and red.
4. There is a desk next to Ahmed's bed.

2 Listen and complete: استمع واكمل:

نص الاستماع اخر الكتاب

1- Ezz lives in an ....
2- There are two .... in the living room.
3- Ezz has an .... in the building.
4- There are .... rooms in the apartment.

3 Read and match (A) with (B): اقرأ وصل:



4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

There are different types of homes all over the world. Many people live in apartments in big cities. These apartments are in big buildings. The buildings have many floors so people use elevators to go to their apartments. People live in houses in the countryside. The houses have gardens around **them**. On hot nights people sleep on roofs because it is cooler there. In the desert people sleep in tents.

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك ان يتعامل مع هذه الأسئلة

A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The general idea of the text is about ....
   a people b houses c roofs d floors
2. The underlined word "**them**" refers to ....
   a gardens b cities c houses d deserts

B- Answer the following questions:

3. Why do people use elevators?
- -
4. What do people do on hot nights?
- -

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

1. you - live - an apartment - in a house - Do - or?
2. a room - my - sister - I - with - share.
3. heavy - was - very - rain - It.
4. homes - did - people - What - use to - build?

6 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1- What do you know about Ancient egyptian homes
2- hamza has a sister called Hala

7 Write a paragraph of Forty (40) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من ٤٠ كلمة عن:

مجاب آخر الوحدة

Your home

rooms - balcony



Theme 3

My society

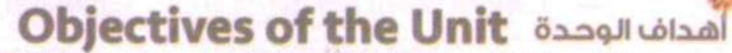


Unit 8 At the doctor's

في عيادة الطبيب







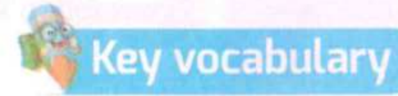
Objectives of the Unit أهداف الوحدة

1. Listen, read, research, and write about different illnesses and treatments.
- يستمع الطالب ويقرأ ويقوم بعمل بحث ويكتب عن الأمراض والعلاج.
2. Read a story about an elephant.
- يقرأ الطالب قصة عن فيل.
3. Practice using "have" to talk about illnesses.
- يتدرب الطالب علي استخدام الفعل "have" للتحدث عن الأمراض.
4. Listen to and understand a conversation between a doctor and a patient.
- يستمع الطالب إلى محادثة بين طبيب ومريض.
5. Learn about and use the prefixes "un, ir, il, and im".
- يتعلم الطالب استخدام بادئات الكلام لاعطاء عكس المعنى (un - ir - il - im).
6. Understand the difference between /f/ and /v/ sounds.
- يفهم الطالب الفرق بين الصوتين / f / و / v /.
7. Write a short paragraph about staying healthy.
- يكتب الطالب فقرة إنشائية عن كيف تكون بصحة جيدة.
8. Plan what to put in a first-aid kit and make a poster.
- يضع الطالب خطة ما الذى يجب وضعه فى صندوق الاسعافات الأولية ويعمل ملصق.

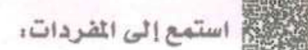





Lesson 1 THEY DIDN'T COME TO THE CLUB!



Key vocabulary



استمع إلى المفردات:


backache
ألم بالظهر


cold
برد


sore throat
التهاب بالحلق


headache
صداع


earache
ألم بالأذن


illnesses
الأمراض


toothache
ألم بالأسنان


cough
كحة / سعال



Other words كلمات أخرى

problem	مشكلة
ankle	كاحل - رسغ القدم
tooth	سِنة
stomach	معدة
shoulder	كتف
swimming	السباحة
dentist	طبيب أسنان

coach	مدرب
feel better	يشعر بتحسن
milk	لبن
honey	عسل
practice	تدريب - تمرين
club	نادى
really	حقًا / جدًا



Unit 8 At the doctor's



Adjectives صفات



good	جيد
OK	بصحة جيدة
bad	سيىء
careful	حريص
worried	قلق

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال



Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
hope	يأمل	hoped
talk	يتكلم	talked

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
have / has	مصاب بـ - يملك	had
hurt	يؤلم	hurt
say	يقول	said

Language Functions وظائف لغوية

1 لسؤال شخص مما تشكو؟

- What's the matter? مما تشكو؟

وللرد نستخدم: My + عضو الجسم + hurts.

- My tooth hurts.

2 لطلب شيء بطريقة مهذبة

- Can I + مصدر الفعل ....? هل من الممكن أن.....؟
- Can I have some milk and honey?



Study the following

1. Did you have a good day at the club? - هل قضيت يومًا ممتعًا فى النادى؟
2. Only five people came to the club today. - أتى خمسة أشخاص فقط إلى النادى اليوم.
3. Are you OK? - هل أنت بخير؟
4. My friend Tarek hurt his ankle at football practice last night. - اصيب صديقى طارق بألم فى كاحله فى تدريب كرة القدم الليلة الماضية.
5. Two of my friends have a cold. - اصيب أثنين من زملائى بالبرد.
6. The coach told us to be careful. - أخبرنا المدرب بأن نكون حذرين.
7. How do you feel? - كيف تشعر؟
8. I hope they'll feel better tomorrow. - أتمنى أن يشعروا بتحسن غدًا.
9. I'm worried about my friends. - أنا قلق علي زملائى.
10. What's the matter? - مما تشكو؟
11. Can I have some milk and honey? - هل ممكن أن أتناول بعض من اللبن والعسل؟
12. It really hurts. - انها تؤلمني حقًا.
13. Amr has an earache from swimming. - عمرو مصاب بألم فى الأذن من السباحة.

1 Listen and read: How does Fares feel today? استمع واقرأ: كيف يشعر فارس اليوم؟

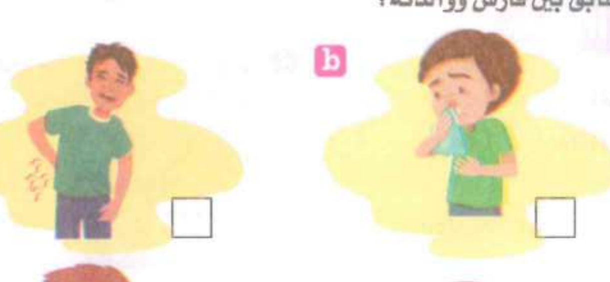
استمع إلى النص:

Tapescript نص الاستماع

Mom : Hi Fares! Did you have a good day at the club?
Fares : Not really. Only five people came to the club today!
Mom : Oh no! Are they OK?
Fares : No, they have problems. My friend Tarek hurt his ankle at football practice last night. And Amr has an earache from swimming.
Mom : What about your cousin Lama? Your aunt said she had a toothache.
Fares : No, she wasn't there. I think she went to the dentist. Two of my friends have a cold. The coach told us to be careful. When we have a cough or a sore throat, we should stay home!
Mom : How do you feel?
Fares : Well, I have a backache and I'm worried about my friends. I hope they'll feel better tomorrow.
Mom : I hope so, too!

2 Listen again and number the photos in the order that Mom and Fares talk about them:

استمع مرة أخرى ورقم الصور حسب الحوار السابق بين فارس ووالدته:



a ☐ b ☐



c ☐



d 1



e ☐



f ☐

3 Listen again. Circle the correct words : استمع مرة أخرى. اختر الكلمة الصحيحة:

1. Fares had a (bad) / **good** day at the club.
2. Tarek hurt his **ankle** / **ear** at football practice.
3. Fares thinks Lama went to the **doctor** / **dentist**.
4. Two of Fares's friends have **a cold** / **an earache**.
5. Fares's **leg** / **back** hurts.

4 Read the words in the box. Look at the pictures and complete the sentences, then listen and check:

اقرأ الكلمات فى المربع. أنظر إلى الصور وأكمل الجمل، ثم استمع وتأكد:



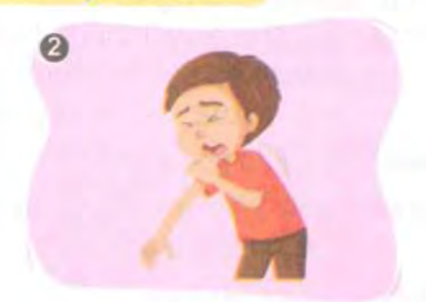
cough - headache - shoulder - toothache

❶



Mom: What's the matter, Dina?
Do you have a toothache ?
Dina: Yes. My tooth hurts!

❷



Mom , can I have some milk and honey for my .... please?

❸



Ouch! My .... hurts!

❹



Mom: What's the matter, Wael?
Does your stomach hurt?
Wael: No, I have a ....

Activities

1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False): استمع واكتب (صواب) أو (خطأ):

نص الاستماع اخر الامتحانات

		True	False
1	Amr went to the club yesterday.		
2	Amr had a toothache.		
3	Amr went to the doctor's.		
4	Amr should stay home.		

2 Read and match (A) with (B): اقرأ وصل:

A	B
1 Did you have	a. feel?
2 What's	b. swimming.
3 How do you	c. a good day at the club?
4 I have a	d. hurts.
5 He has an earache from	e. the matter?
	f. backache.

3 Reorder the words to make correct sentences: أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

1. matter - is - What - the?

----

2. I - have - Can - milk - some?

----

3. have - Do - you - sore - a - throat?

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك فى التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة.

4. told - The coach - to - us - careful - be.

----

5. am - friends - I - about - worried - my.

----

6. should - stay - We - home.

----

4 Punctuate the following:
ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

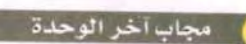
1. how do you feel

----

2. my tooth hurts

----

5 Write a paragraph of Forty (40) words using the following guiding elements:
اكتب فقرة إنشائية من ٤٠ كلمة عن:



A toothache

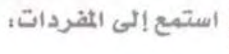
tooth - hurts





Lesson 2 ★ CLIL Science part 1

Key vocabulary


استمع إلى المفردات:


fresh water ماء عذب

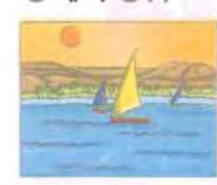

salt water مياه مالحة / ماء البحر


glacier جبل جليدى



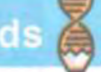
lake بحيرة




river نهر

ocean محيط


stream مجرى / جدول مائى

Other words كلمات أخرى


important	هام
health	صحة
stomachache	ألم بالمعدة
crops	محاصيل
sea water	مياه البحر
glass	كوب
bathwater	المياه المستخدمة للاستحمام

rain	مطر
the Red Sea	البحر الأحمر
the Mediterranean Sea	البحر الأبيض المتوسط
drinking water	مياه الشرب
a day	فى اليوم

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضِ
use	يستخدم	used
talk	يتكلم	talked

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضِ
drink	يشرب	drank
can	يستطيع	could

1 **Work with a partner. Discuss:** اعمل مع زميلك. ناقش:

1. How many glasses of water do you drink every day?

I drink 8 glasses of fresh water a day.

2. Why is water important for your health?

Tip!

- Salt water can also be called sea water . It is the water in seas and oceans.

المياه المالحة تسمى أيضا بمياه البحر. وهى المياه الموجودة فى البحار والمحيطات.

2 **Look and complete:** انظر وأكمل:

glacier - lake - ocean - river - stream

1 

glacier

2 

---

3 

---

4 

---

5 

---

3 **Look at the photos. Do you think the water is fresh water or salt water? Discuss with a partner:**

انظر إلى الصور. فى رأيك هل تحتوى الصور على مياه عذبه أم مالحة؟ ناقش مع زميلك:



1. bathwater



2. water for crops



3. drinking water



4. the Red Sea

4 **Think. What's the difference between the water in the River Nile and the Mediterranean Sea? Why can't we drink the water in the sea? Use these clues to talk about your answers:**

فكر. ما الفرق بين المياه الموجودة فى النيل وبين المياه الموجودة فى البحر الأبيض المتوسط؟ لماذا لا نستطيع شرب المياه من البحر؟ استخدام الكلمات المساعدة للتحدث عن إجابتك:

fresh water - salt water - health - salt - stream - rain - stomachache





The River Nile has fresh water but the ---



★ Describing the elephant Part 2



Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات:

blind	كفيف	spear	رُمح
trunk	خرطوم الفيل (زلومة)	rope	حَبل
tusk	ناب الفيل	flexible	مرن/ لين

Other words كلمات أخرى

leaf	ورقة شجر	in fact	فى الحقيقة
each	كل	both	كلاهما
idea	فكرة	along	بطول / بمحاذاة
tail	ذيل	side	جانب
part	جزء	snake	ثعبان
stick	عصا	tree trunk	جذع شجرة
moment	لحظة	finally	اخيرا

Adjectives صفات

incredible	مُدهش	wrong	خطأ
excited	متحمس	round	دائرى/ مستدير
enormous / huge	ضخم	hard	صلب
strong	قوى	long	طويل
pointed	مدبب	smooth	ناعم الملمس
clever	ماهر/ ذكى	flat	مسطح/ مستوٍ
correct	صحيح		

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
discover	يكتشف	discovered
shape	يتشكل / يأخذ شكل	shaped
look like	يشبه	looked like
touch	يلمس	touched
reach	يصل إلى	reached
listen	يستمع	listened
stop	يوقف / يتوقف	stopped
walk over	يمشى بجوار	walked over

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
meet	يقابل	met
put	يضع	put
am / is	يكون	was
are	يكونوا	were
find out	يكتشف	found out

Language Functions وظائف لغوية

Ordinal numbers الأعداد الترتيبية

◉ **نستخدم الأعداد الترتيبية للتحدث عن ترتيب شىء:**

- first , second, third, fourth, fifth, sixth ....

الأول , الثانى , الثالث , الرابع , الخامس , السادس

Definitions تعريفات

blind	كفيف	can't see
trunk	خرطوم الفيل (زلومة)	the very long nose of an elephant
tusk	ناب الفيل	a very long pointed tooth
spear	رُمح	a long pointed stick



Study the following

1. **A long time ago, there were six blind men.**
   - منذ وقت طويل، كان هناك ستة أشخاص مكفوفين.
2. **Each man had a different idea.**
   - كان لكل رجل فكرة مختلفة.
3. **The men were excited.**
   - كان الرجال متحمسين.
4. **The first man touched the side of the elephant.**
   - لمس الرجل الأول جانب الفيل.
5. **It's very tall and very strong. It's like a wall.**
   - إنه قوى وطويل جدًا. إنه يشبه الحائط.

6 You're wrong! It's round and strong. - انت مخطىء! إنه مستدير وقوى.

7 The elephant is long and flexible. - الفيل طويل ولين.

8 He reached out and touched the elephant's ear. - وصل الرجل إلى اذن الفيل ولمسها.

9 This elephant is smooth and flat. - هذا الفيل ملمسه ناعم ومسطح.

10 You're all correct. - انتم جميعا على صواب.

11 The elephant is the biggest animal in the world. - الفيل هو اكبر حيوان فى العالم.

12 When we listen to other people, we can understand the world better.
- عندما نستمع للأخرين، نستطيع فهم العالم بطريقة أفضل.

1 Read and listen to the story. What is special about the men?

اقرأ واستمع إلى القصة. ما المميز فى الرجال؟

استمع إلى النص:

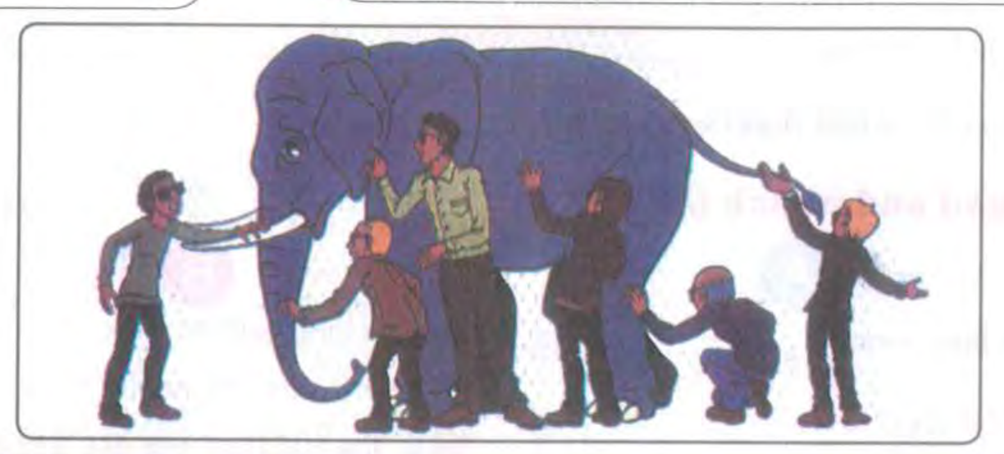
A long time ago , there were six **blind** men who wanted to meet an elephant They had heard many stories about these incredible(1) animals, but each man(2) had a different idea about what the elephant would look like.
One day, a local farmer(3) was walking along(4) the road with an elephant that worked on his farm. The farmer asked if the men would like to touch the elephant to discover(5) how it looks. The men were very excited and walked over (6) to the enormous animal.
The first man touched the side of the elephant. He said, "It's very tall and very strong . It's like a wall! "
The second man put his arms around the elephant's back leg. He said, "No, you're wrong(7)! It's round and strong, like a tree trunk(8)!"
When the third man put his hand on the elephant's trunk, he said,"You're both(9) wrong! The elephant is long and flexible(10) ... it's just like a snake!"
The fourth man put his fingers against the elephant's tusk(11). He said, "It's hard, long, and smooth. I think it's dangerous like a spear(12)! "
The fifth man was very, very tall. He reached out and touched the elephant's ear. He said, "This elephant is smooth and flat, and shaped(13) just like a leaf! "
Finally, the sixth man put his hand on the elephant's tail. He said, "This elephant is not like a wall, a spear, or a snake. It's not like a leaf or tree trunk! This elephant is just like a rope(14)!"
The farmer listened to everything the men said. He turned to them and said, "In fact, you're all correct! Each of you only touched one part of the elephant. If you stop for a moment, and listen to what you all think, you can all see what the elephant looks like."

Arabic Meaning
١- مدهش
٢- كل رجل
٣- فلاح من السكان المحليين
٤- بمحاذاة
٥- يكتشف
٦- مشى بجوار
٧- خطأ
٨- جذع شجرة
٩- كلاهما
١٠- مرن
١١- ناب
١٢- رمح
١٣- يأخذ شكل
١٤- حبل

2 Match the words to their correct meaning.

صل الكلمة بمعناها الصحيح:

A	B
1 blind	a. a very long pointed tooth
2 trunk	b. a long pointed stick
3 tusk	c. the very long nose of an elephant
4 spear	d. can't see



3 Answer the questions in your notebook.

أجب عن الأسئلة فى كراستك:

1. What did the blind men want to find out?
2. What did the first blind man say about the elephant?
3. Which part of the elephant was like a tree trunk? Why?
4. Why did the fourth blind man think the elephant's tusk was like a spear?
5. Which part of the elephant was like a huge leaf?
6. What did the sixth blind man think the elephant's tail was like?
7. What did the farmer tell blind men to do? Why?

4 What do you think the moral of the story is?

ما رأيك ما هو الدرس الأخلاقى (المغزى) من هذه القصة؟

1. The elephant is the biggest animal in the world.
2. Blind men are very clever, and they are good at describing things .
3. When we listen to other people, we can understand the world better.



Activities

1 Listen and complete:
استمع واكمل:



1. Hani went to the .... yesterday.
2. Hani saw a lot of ....
3. Hani took many ....
4. The animal that Hani liked was the ....

2 Read and match (A) with (B):
اقرأ وصل:

A	B
1 A blind man	a. a long pointed stick.
2 The spear is	b. important for health?
3 I drink eight	c. the elephant was like a huge leaf?
4 Why is water	d. biggest animal.
5 Which part of	e. can't see.
	f. glasses of fresh water a day.

3 Read the text and answer the questions:
اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

My name is Osama. I like trips. Last week. I went on a trip to the zoo with my friends at school. I liked animals in the zoo. One of these animals was the elephant. **It** was very big. The elephant's ear was like a huge leaf. It was very tall.

The elephant's leg was like a tree trunk. I gave the elephant a carrot. My friends said that the elephant was the biggest animal in the zoo. It was very fun.

A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The underlined word "**It**" refers to the ....
   a zoo   b elephant   c trip   d ear
2. The passage is mainly about the ....
   a cat   b lion   c elephant   d donkey

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك فى التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة.



B- Answer the following questions:

3. Summarize the second paragraph in one sentence.

----

4. What did Osama give the elephant?

----

4 Read and reorder the following to make sentences:
أعد ترتيب الكلمات:

1. drink - eight - I - glasses - fresh water - of.

----

2. both - You - wrong - are.

----

3. elephant - long - The - flexible - is - and.

----

4. man - had - Each - idea - a - different.

----

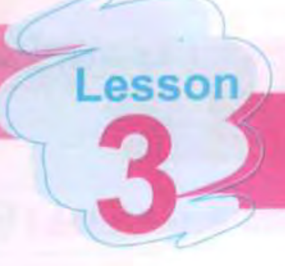
5. all - You - correct - are.

----

5 Punctuate the following:
ضع علامات الترقيم:

1- what did the blind man want to find out

2- the farmer listened to everything



★ How are you?

Key vocabulary



استمع إلى المفردات:

family members	أفراد الأسرة	unwell	مريض - ليس بحالة جيدة
crowded	مزدحم	relative (s)	قريب (أقارب)
injections	حقن	staff	هيئة الموظفين (طاقم العاملين)
corridor	طرقة - ممر	helpful	مفيد

Other words كلمات أخرى

care for	يعتنى بـ	sick person= patient	شخص مريض
bridge	جسر - كوبرى	alone	بمفرده
throat	حلق	instead of	بدلاً من
playground	ملعب	Don't worry	لا تقلق
bandage	ضمادة	cut	جرح
feel well	يشعر انه بخير	text	نص
southern	جنوبى	class	فصل - حصة

Adjectives & opposites الصفات وعكسها

responsible	مسئول	irresponsible	غير مسئول
legal	شرعى - قانونى	illegal	غير قانونى
moral	أخلاقى	immoral	غير اخلاقى
polite	مؤدب	impolite	غير مؤدب
possible	ممكن	impossible	غير ممكن
fit	لائق بدنيا	unfit	غير لائق بدنيًا
usual	معتاد	unusual	غير معتاد
regular	منتظم	irregular	غير منتظم

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
stay	يقيم - يبقى	stayed
clean	ينظف	cleaned
turn	يحول - يلف	turned
care	يعتنى بـ	cared
work	يعمل	worked
treat	يعالج	treated

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
fall	يقع / يسقط	fell
come in	يدخل	came in
teach	يُدرس / يعلم	taught
give	يعطى	gave
become	يصبح	became
learn	يتعلم	learned / learnt

Grammar قواعد لغوية

1 Verb to have

have / has مصاب بـ

- يستخدم الفعل **have / has** للتحدث عن الأمراض بمعنى مصاب بـ كالآتى:

I - you - we - they- اسم جمع → **have**
He - she - it- اسم مفرد ⟶ **has**
} + اسم المرض .

- I **have** a headache.
- He **has** a sore throat.

◉ وللنفى نستخدم الصيغة التالية :

I - you - we - they- اسم جمع → **don't** have
He - she - it- اسم مفرد ⟶ **doesn't** have
} + اسم المرض .

- I **don't** have a headache.
- He **doesn't** have a toothache.

◉ وللسؤال نستخدم الصيغة التالية :

Do + I - you - we - they - اسم جمع + **have**
Does + he - she - it اسم مفرد + **have**
} + اسم المرض ?

- **Do** you **have** a cold? **Yes**, I **do**. / **No**, I **don't**.
- **Does** he **have** a cold? **Yes**, he **does**. / **No**, he **doesn't**.

The prefixes (un-ir-il-im) البادئات

1 prefixes البادئات

◉ هناك بعض المقاطع التى تسمى بادئات والتى يمكن اضافتها اول بعض الكلمات حيث تغير المعنى مثال البادئات (un , ir , il , im) والتى تعطى النفى من الكلمة :

◉ و تستخدم هذه البادئات قبل الصفات لاعطاء عكس المعنى للصفة مثل:

usual → unusual	well → unwell

◉ تستخدم البادئة "ir" إذا بدأت الصفة بحرف "r":

- "ir" ⟶ responsible ⟶ irresponsible

◉ تستخدم البادئة "il" عندما تبدأ الصفة بحرف "l":

- "il" ⟶ legal ⟶ illegal

◉ تستخدم البادئة "im" اذا بدأت الصفة بحرفى "m , p":

- "im" ⟶ possible ⟶ impossible
  moral ⟶ immoral

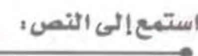
Study the following

1. Do you have a headache? – هل انت مصاب بـ صداع؟
2. Does Nader have a headache? – هل نادر مصاب بـ صداع؟
3. I have a cut on my arm. – لدى جرح فى ذراعى.
4. Don't worry. I'll clean it and put a bandage on it. – لا تقلق. سوف أنظف الجرح وأضع عليه ضمادة.
5. The hospital treats patients from all over the country. – تعالج المستشفى المرضى من كل أنحاء البلاد.
6. It is unusual for a sick person to go to the hospital alone. – من غير المألوف أن يذهب الشخص المريض للمستشفى بمفرده.
7. Family usually go with their unwell relative. – تذهب الأسرة عادة مع الشخص المريض من أقاربهم.
8. Some people learn how to change bandages and others learn how to give injections. – يتعلم بعض الناس كيفية تغيير الضمادات والبعض الآخر يتعلم كيفية إعطاء الحقن.

9. The nurses become teachers and the family members become students. – تصبح الممرضات معلمات ويصبح أفراد الأسرة متعلمين.
10. They have classes to teach the families. – لديهم حصص (دروس) لتعليم العائلات (الأسر).
11. It also helps the families to care for their relatives. – تساعد أيضًا الاسر فى الاهتمام بأقاربهم.
12. The staff at this hospital do something special. – تفعل هيئة الموظفين فى هذه المستشفى شيئًا مميزاً.

1 Listen and read. What's the matter with Ashraf?

استمع وأقرأ. مما يشكو أشرف؟



استمع إلى النص:

Tapescript نص الاستماع



Ashraf : Hello, Doctor. I don't feel well.
Doctor : What's the matter, Ashraf? Do you have a headache?
Ashraf : No, Doctor. I don't have a headache.
Doctor : Do you have a stomachache?
Ashraf : No, Doctor. I don't have a stomachache.
Doctor : Do you have a toothache?
Ashraf : No, Doctor. I don't have a toothache. I have ... I have ... Achoo!
Doctor : Oh, dear! You have a cold. Stay home, sleep well, and take this medicine.

2 Look at the pictures. Complete the sentences:

انظر إلى الصور. أكمل الجمل:


① Salma


② Amir


③ Reem



④ Tarek


⑤ Lama

1. ......Amir has...... a stomachache.
2. .... a toothache.
3. .... a cold.
4. .... an earache.
5. .... a headache.

3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences or questions:

ضع الكلمات فى ترتيبها الصحيح لتكون جمل أو أسئلة ؟

1. you / an earache / Do / have / ?

----

2. sore / a / I / throat / have / .

----

3. a / has / He / cold / .

----

4. Nader / have / Does / headache / a / ?

----

5. he / No, / doesn't / .

----

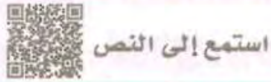
4 Read. What part of her body has Nahla hurt?

اقرأ. أى جزء من أجزاء الجسم يؤلم نهلة؟

Nurse : Come in. Nahla. What's the matter?
Nahla : I fell over in the playground.
Nurse : Oh, dear. Where does it hurt?
Nahla : Here. I have a cut on my arm.
Nurse : Oh, yes, I see. Don't worry. I'll clean it and put a bandage on it.
Nahla : Thank you, nurse.

5 Listen and read. Which country is this hospital in?

استمع واقرأ. أى دولة بها المستشفى؟


استمع إلى النص

A special Hospital



In a hospital in Bangalore[1], a city in southern India, there are many patients. The hospital treats[2] patients from all over the country. With every patient, there are about ten family members[3]. In India, it is unusual for a sick person to go to the hospital alone[4]. Family usually go with their unwell relative[5]. This means that the hospital is often very crowded and busy. But instead of[6] telling family members that they can't visit their sick relatives, the staff at this hospital do something special[7]. They turn a problem into something wonderful. They have classes to teach the family to look after the sick person. For example, some people learn how to change bandages and others learn how to give injections[8].

Arabic Meaning

١- مدينة بانجالور (جنوب الهند)
٢- يعالج
٣- أعضاء
٤- بمفرده
٥- قريب
٦- بدلا من
٧- مميز
٨- حقن

Each afternoon, staff[9] from the hospital turn the corridors into classrooms. The nurses become teachers and the family members - and sometimes even the patients - become the students. Not only does[10] this help the hospital staff, but it also helps the families to care for their relatives when they go home. The staff know that the lessons work because not as many patients return[11] to the hospital now.

٩- هيئة الموظفين
١٠- ليس فقط
١١- يعود

6 Complete the summary of the text with the words in the box:

أكمل ملخص النص بالكلمات من بين الأقواس:

helpful - hospital - injection - staff - patients - relatives

The text is about a ❶ .... in India. It is a very busy place that treats ❷ .... from all over the country. People usually travel to the hospital with many ❸ .... so this means the hospital is always very crowded. At the hospital, the ❹ .... teach the family members how to do useful things, like changing a bandage or giving an ❺ ....

This is ❻ .... for both the staff and the patients.

7 Rewrite these sentences so they mean the opposite. Use the prefix un-:

أعد كتابة الجمل لاعطاء عكس المعنى. استخدم البادئة "un":

1. Tarek is happy.

----

2. The bridge is safe.

----

3. Dad is fit.

----

8 Look at the chart. Add the prefix ir-, il-, or im- to these words:

ضع البادئات الآتية (ir ,il ,im) للكلمات لاعطاء عكس المعنى:

1. legal ----------------- 2. polite -----------------

3. moral ----------------- 4. regular -----------------

Activities



1 Listen and complete: استمع واكمل:

نص الاستماع اخر الكتاب

1. Hazem was .... yesterday.
2. Hazem's .... hurts.
3. The doctor told Hazem to stay ....
4. Hazem took .... and felt well .

2 Read and match (A) with (B): اقرأ وصل:

A	B
1 Amir has	a. have an earache?
2 Do you	b. people in the hospital.
3 Don't	c. is immoral.
4 The opposite of "moral"	d. a cold.
5 There are a lot of	e. worry, I'll clean it.
	f. matter?

3 Reorder the words to make correct sentences: أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

1. fell - in - over - I - playground - the.

---

2. it - does - Where - hurt?

---

3. unwell - go with - usually - Family - their - relative.

---

4. I - my arm - have - a cut - on.

---

4 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

1. amir has a toothache

---

2. what's the matter

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك فى التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة



Lesson 4 ★ The power of honey

Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات:

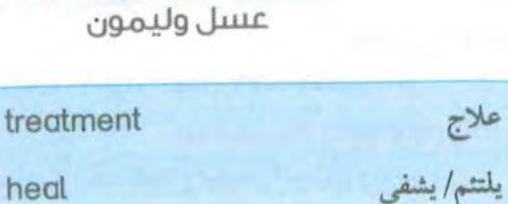


bandage
ضمادة

sunscreen
كريم واقى من الشمس



pills
أقراص دواء



honey and lemon
عسل وليمون



wound
جرح



cut knee
جرح بالركبة

treatment	علاج
heal	يلتئم/ يشفى
bacteria	بكتريا
sunburn	حرق شمس

Other words كلمات أخرى

basbousa	بسبوسة
injures	اصابات
substance	مادة
recently	حديثًا / مؤخرًا
illnesses	أمراض
countries	دول- بلاد
thousand = 1000	ألف
however	بالرغم من/ مع ذلك
medical care	رعاية طبية
jar	برطمان
perhaps	ربما
types	أنواع

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
enjoy	يستمتع بـ	enjoyed
kill	يقتل	killed
treat	يعالج	treated
heal	يلتئم / يُشفى	healed
damage	يتلف	damaged

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
cut	يجرح	cut
know	يعرف	knew
make	يصنع	made
get better	يتحسن	got better

Study the following

1. I cut my knee last week. جرحت ركبتى الأسبوع الماضى.
2. My grandpa put a bandage on it. وضع جدى ضمادة على الجرح.
3. Did you know that honey isn't only a food? هل تعلم أن العسل ليس بطعام فقط؟
4. Doctors have used honey for thousands of years. استخدم الأطباء العسل لآلاف السنين.
5. It is also used as a treatment for some injuries and illnesses. يستخدم أيضًا كعلاج لبعض الجروح والأمراض.
6. It was first used to treat wounds by Egyptian doctors. تم استخدام (العسل) كعلاج للجروح بواسطة الأطباء المصريين.
7. Some types of honey contain things that can help to kill bacteria. تحتوى بعض أنواع العسل على أشياء تساعد فى قتل البكتريا.
8. You must be careful. يجب عليك أن تكون حذرًا.
9. Honey is the sweetest substance on Earth. العسل هو أكثر مادة مذاقها حلو على وجه الأرض.

Definitions تعريفات

treatment	علاج	medical care to help you get better
wound	جرح	an injury that damage your skin
bacteria	بكتريا	very small things that can make you ill
heal	يلتئم - يشفى	to get better

1 **Look at these items. Match them to the problems.**

انظر إلى الأشياء وصلها بالمشكلات المناسبة لها.



a. bandage



b. sunscreen

1- a sore throat
2- a cut knee
3- sunburn
4- a headache



c. honey and lemon



d. pills

2 **When was the last time you needed an item from Exercise 1? What happened? Tell your partner.**

متى آخر مرة احتجت فيها لأشياء من التمرين رقم ١؟ ماذا حدث؟ أبلغ زميلك.



I had sunburn so I --

----

3 Read the first paragraph of an article about honey. What two ways does the writer say we use honey in food?

اقرأ الفقرة الأولى عن العسل. ما هما الطريقتين التى نستخدم بهما العسل فى الطعام؟

استمع إلى النص:

Do you like honey? **Perhaps**[1] you enjoy eating it for breakfast. Or maybe you enjoy it in a sweet basbousa? But did you know that honey isn't only a food? It is also used as a **treatment**[2] for some **injuries**[3] and illnesses.



In some countries, honey has been used by doctors for thousands of years. It was first used to treat **wounds**[4] by Egyptian doctors around 5,000 years ago. **Recently**[5], scientists have tried to find out **exactly**[6] why honey is so good for **healing**[7] wounds and treating illnesses.

Scientists know that some types of honey **contain**[8] things that can help to kill **bacteria**[9]. This helps wounds to heal more quickly. You must be careful, however. The honey that doctors use is a special honey only that is safe to use as a treatment. So, if you have a jar of honey in your **cupboard**[10], you can mix it with milk to make your cough better, but don't put it on your cut knee!

Arabic Meaning

١- ربما
٢- علاج
٣- اصابات
٤- جروح
٥- حديثا-مؤخرا
٦- بالضبط
٧- التئام
٨- يحتوى على
٩- بكتريا
١٠- خزانة

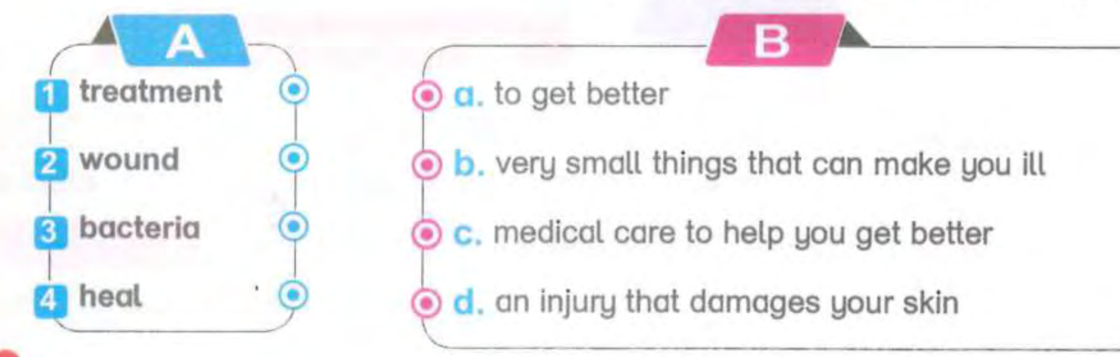
4 Now read the full article. Check (✓) the facts that are mentioned:

الآن اقرأ الحوار كاملاً. ضع علامة (✓) أمام الحقائق المذكورة:

1. Bees make honey. ☐
2. Honey is the sweetest substance on Earth. ☐
3. Doctors have used honey for thousands of years. ☐
4. Some types of honey can kill bacteria. ☐

5 Look at the words in bold in the article. Match them to their meaning

انظر إلى الكلمات بخط سميك فى المقال. صل الكلمة بمعناها.



A	B
1 treatment	a. to get better
2 wound	b. very small things that can make you ill
3 bacteria	c. medical care to help you get better
4 heal	d. an injury that damages your skin



Pronunciation



استمع إلى النص:

- ندرس فى هذا الدرس الفرق بين صوتى حرفى الـ (f) , (v).
- ينطق حرف (f) باستخدام الأسنان العليا والشفاه السفلى ولكن بدون اهتزاز الأحبال الصوتية.
- ينطق حرف (v) باستخدام الأسنان العليا والشفاه السفلى مع اهتزاز الأحبال الصوتية.
- وفيما يلى الكلمات التى تحتوى على الصوتين (f) , (v).





life	حياة
safe	آمن
few	قليل
fine	جيل
fast	سريع
friend	صديق



leave	يغادر
live	يعيش
very	جدًا
save	يحفظ / يوفر
lovely	جميل

1 Complete the words with 'f' or 'v'. Then listen and say:

أكمل الكلمات باستخدام الحرفين (F) أو (V) ثم استمع إلى النص:



1. I have a pet .... rog.



2. Hany is a .... et.



3. I have a very long scar ....



4. Do you like .... egetables?



5. I really like .... ruit.



6. We like watching tele .... ision .

2 Read, listen, and circle. Then listen again and repeat:

اقرأ واستمع ثم ضع دائرة. استمع مرة أخرى وردد النطق:

1. van	fan
2. leave	leaf
3. life	live
4. ferry	very
5. few	view
6. safe	save

How to make the /f/ sound:
Rest your top teeth on your lower lip.
Blow, but **don't** use your voice!
How to make the /v/ sound:
Rest your top teeth on your lower lip.
Blow, but **do** use your voice!

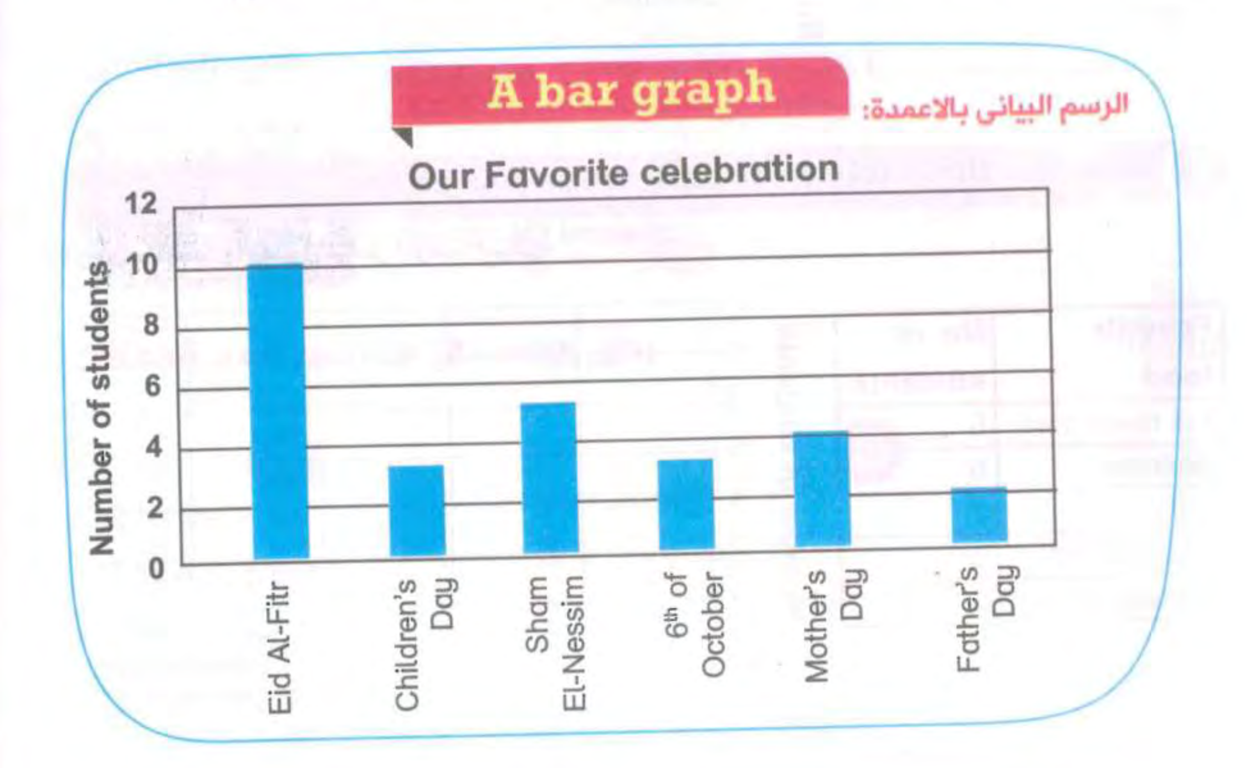
3 Say these sentences. Say them again as fast as you can:

قل هذه الجُمل. انطقهم بسرعة على قدر استطاعتك (لتتمكن من التفرقة بين F و V):

1. Is there a fan in the very big van?
2. Leave the lovely leaf on the tree!
3. A few friends saw the very fine view.
4. The ferry is very fast!
5. It's safe to save your money here!



- يستخدم شريط الرسم البيانى لعرض المعلومات على شكل أعمدة وفيما يلى عرض نموذج للرسم البيانى باستخدام الأعمدة حيث يمثل احتفال الطلاب ببعض الأعياد:



1 Look and read. Then label the bar chart: انظر واقرأ. اكمل الرسم البيانى:

A bar chart is a way of showing information. Last week, 30 students were asked about their favorite free-time activity to stay healthy. Here is the result of their survey. Which favorite activity was enjoyed by the biggest number of students?

الرسم البيانى هو طريقة لعرض المعلومات. تم سؤال ٣٠ تلميذ الأسبوع الماضي عن النشاط المفضل لديهم فى أوقات فراغهم للمحافظة على صحتهم. وفيما يلى نتيجة استطلاع الرأي. أي من الأنشطة المفضلة لديه أكبر عدد من التلاميذ؟

Favorite activity	No. of students
Swimming	6
Football	15
Reading	3
Taking long walks	5
Cooking	1

Number of students: 0, 3, 6, 9, 12, 15

Swimming ....

Favorite activity

2 Now use this table to complete the bar chart:

الآن استخدم هذا الجدول لتكمل الرسم البيانى:

Favorite food	No. of students
Ful medames	6
Koshari	6
Kofta	7
Fiteer baladi	9
Shawerma	5



Activities

1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False): استمع واكتب (صواب) أو (خطأ):

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب

	True	False
1 Doaa has a sore throat.		
2 Doaa has honey with lemon.		
3 Honey isn't useful.		
4 Some types of honey can kill bacteria.		

2 Read and match (A) with (B): اقرأ وصل:

A

1. Bacteria are
2. Honey is used
3. Honey is good for
4. The ferry is
5. Bees make

B

a. honey.
b. very fast.
c. healing wounds.
d. as a treatment.
e. big leaf.
f. very small things that can make you ill.

3 Reorder the words to make correct sentences: أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة

1. types - Some - of honey - bacteria - can - kill.

---

2. week - I - cut - knee - last - my.

---

3. have - used - honey - Doctors - thousands - for - years - of.

---

4. substance - is - on Earth - Honey - the sweetest.

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك فى التعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

4 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للاتى:

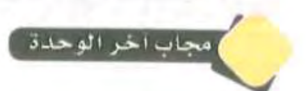
1. i really like fruit

---

2. do you like vegetables

---

5 Write a paragraph of Forty (40) words using the following guiding elements: اكتب فقرة إنشائية من ٤٠ كلمة عن:



Honey

kill - sore throat





★ Writing

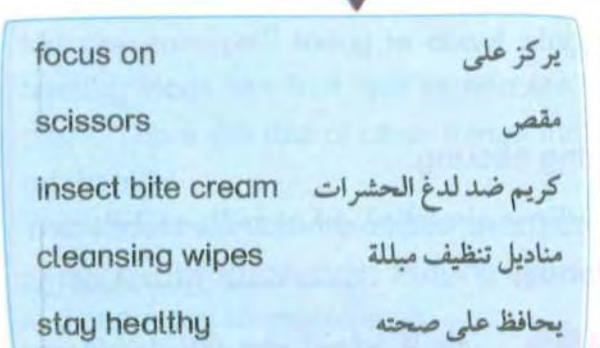
Key vocabulary


استمع إلى المفردات:

playing sports	لعب الرياضة	presentation	عرض تقديمي
eating vegetables	اكل الخضراوات	spending time with friends	قضاء وقت مع الأصدقاء
reading books	قراءة الكتب	drinking plenty of water	شرب المياه بكمية كبيرة
getting enough sleep	النوم بشكل كافى	expert (s)	خبير / خبراء
visiting a doctor	زيارة الدكتور		
balanced diet	نظام غذائى متوازن		

Other words كلمات أخرى

focus on	يركز على	exercise	تمرين - تدريب
scissors	مقص	In addition to	بالإضافة إلى
insect bite cream	كريم ضد لدغ الحشرات	medical gloves	قفازات طبية
cleansing wipes	مناديل تنظيف مبللة	rubber band	رباط مطاطى
stay healthy	يحافظ على صحته	safety pin	دبوس مشبك



Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
look after	يعتنى	looked after
exercise	يتمرن	exercised
need	يحتاج	needed

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
eat	يأكل	ate
do	يفعل	did
keep	يحافظ	kept
get	يحصل علي	got
spend	يقضى	spent

Language Functions
وظائف لغوية

1 Giving advice اعطاء النصيحة

- لاعطاء النصيحة نستخدم أحد الصيغ الآتية:
- نستخدم (should) لاعطاء النصيحة بمعنى «ينبغى أن»، ويأتي بعدها الفعل فى المصدر.

فاعل (كل الضمائر) + should + (inf) مصدر الفعل.

- You should eat healthy foods.

2 It's important

- وهناك صيغة أخرى لاعطاء النصيحة باستخدام "It's important to" من المهم أن ....



It's important to + inf مصدر الفعل.

- It's important to get enough sleep.

3 One of the best ways

- وهناك صيغة أخرى للنصيحة وهى:

One of the best ways to + inf مصدر الفعل. من أفضل الطرق أن.

- One of the best ways to stay healthy is to spend time with your friends.

Study the following

1. **My presentation today is about staying healthy.**
العرض التقديمى اليوم عن كيف تحافظ على صحتك.
2. **It's really important to eat healthy foods.** من المهم ان تتناول أطعمة صحية.
3. **You should do some exercise every day.** يجب عليك أن تؤدى بعض التمارين كل يوم.
4. **It's very important to keep your body moving.** من المهم أن تبقى جسمك فى حالة حركة.
5. **Playing sports at school or with friends is a good way to exercise.**
لعب الرياضة فى المدرسة أو مع الأصدقاء طريقة جيدة للتمرين.
6. **It's important to get enough sleep.** من المهم أن تنام بشكل كافى.
7. **Experts think you should get between eight and nine hours of sleep every night.**
يعتقد الخبراء بأنك تحتاج من ثمانية إلى تسعة ساعات نوم كل ليلة.
8. **You should make time to focus on being happy.** يجب عليك أن تجعل وقتك سعيدًا.
9. **Spending time with your family and friends is a great way to do this.**
قضاء وقت مع الأسرة والأصدقاء طريقة رائعة للسعادة.

1 Read Asma's presentation. Check (✓) the things that she talks about:
اقرأ العرض التقديمى «لأسماء». ضع علامة ✓ على الأشياء التى تحدثت عنها؟

My list of healthy things to do

- playing sport ☐
- eating vegetables ☐
- reading books ☐
- getting enough sleep ☐
- visiting a doctor ☐
- spending time with friends ☐
- drinking plenty of water ☐



استمع إلى المفردات:

My presentation[1] today is about staying healthy. It is really[2] important to eat healthy foods like fruit and vegetables and to have a balanced diet[3]. There are lots of other things that we can do to look after our health.
You should do some exercise every day. It's very important to keep your body moving[4]. Playing sport at school or with friends is a good way to exercise.
Another thing you can do is to go to bed early. It's important to[5] get enough sleep. Experts think you should get between eight and nine hours of sleep every night.
In addition[6] to this, one of the best ways to stay healthy is to spend time with your friends. It's not only your body that you need to keep healthy, you should make time to focus on[7] being happy, too. Spending time with your family and friends is a great[8] way to do this.

Arabic Meaning
١- عرض تقديمى
٢- بالفعل
٣- نظام غذائى متوازن
٤- يحافظ على حركة الجسم
٥- من المهم أن
٦- بالإضافة إلى
٧- يركز
٨- رائع

2 Read Asma's presentation again. Complete the sentences:
اقرأ مقال «أسماء» مرة أخرى. أكمل الجُمل.

1. Asma says it's important to eat ....
2. Asma says that .... is a good way to exercise .
3. You should sleep between .... hours every night.
4. Spending time with your friends is good for your ....

3 Asma's class completed a table about staying healthy. Look at the table. Complete it for you:

اكمل فصل أسماء جدول عن كيف تحافظ على صحتك انظر إلى الجدول. أكمل الجدول الخاص بك :

Key: 😊😊😊 = very good 😊😊 = OK 😟 = could do better

Eating healthy foods	😟
Getting enough sleep	😊😊
Drinking plenty of water	😊😊😊
Playing sport	😊😊😊
Spending time with friends	😊😊

Eating healthy foods	
Getting enough sleep	
Drinking plenty of water	
Playing sport	
Spending time with friends	

4 Work in groups. Discuss and decide:

اعمل في مجموعات وناقش وقرر:

You are going on a school trip to the desert. Your class is responsible for packing the firs-aid kit. Look at the objects below. In groups, discuss which four items you want to take and why these are the most useful.

Take bandages in case someone cuts their knee.

- سوف تذهب في رحلة مدرسية في الصحراء. وفصلك مسئول عن تعبئة صندوق الإسعافات الأولية. انظر إلى الأشياء بالأسفل. ناقش في مجموعات أى من هذه الأشياء سوف توضع في صندوق الإسعافات الأولية. ولماذا هذه الأشياء مفيدة؟


bandages



sunscreen


scissors


insect bite cream

cleansing wipes


medical gloves


rubber bands


safety pins



soap



Activities

1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False): استمع واكتب (صواب) أو (خطأ):

نص الاستماع اخر الكتاب

	True	False
1 Soha eats unhealthy foods.		
2 Soha takes the bus to school.		
3 Soha's friends keep their body moving.		
4 Soha spends time with her friends.		

2 Read and match (A) with (B): اقرأ وصل:

A	B
1 It's really important	a. focus on being happy.
2 You should sleep	b. after our health.
3 Spend time with	c. between 8 to 9 hours of sleep.
4 We should look	d. body that you need.
5 You should make time to	e. to eat healthy foods.
	f. your friends.

3 Reorder the words to make correct sentences: أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

1. today - about - is - **My presentation** - healthy - staying.

---

2. should - do - **You** - exercise - some.

---

3. sport - a good - **Playing** - is - to exercise - way.

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك في التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة.

4. important - It's - enough - get - sleep - to .

---

5. do - What - stay - do - healthy - you - to?

---

4 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

1. you should eat vegetables

---

2. what are they good at

---

5 Write a paragraph of Forty (40) words using the following guiding elements: اكتب فقرة إنشائية من ٤٠ كلمة عن:



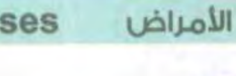
Keeping healthy

exercise - plenty of water





Review



illnesses الأمراض


backache ألم بالظهر


cold برد


sore throat التهاب بالحلق


headache صداع


earache ألم بالأذن


toothache ألم بالأسنان


cough كحة


bandage ضمادة


sunscreen كريم واقى من الشمس


pills أقراص دواء


honey and lemon عسل وليمون


wound جرح


cut knee جرح بالركبة

Water المياه

fresh water ماء عذب

salt water مياه مالحة


glacier جبل جليدى


lake بحيرة




river نهر


ocean محيط


stream مجرى / جدول مائى

blind	كفيف	spear	رُمح
trunk	خرطوم الفيل (زلومة)	rope	حَبْل
tusk	ناب الفيل	flexible	مرن/ لين
unwell	مريض - ليس بحالة جيدة	family members	أفراد الأسرة
relative (s)	قريب (أقارب)	crowded	مزدحم
staff	هيئة الموظفين	injections	حقن
helpful	مفيد	corridor	طرقة - ممر
treatment	علاج	bacteria	بكتريا
heal	يلتئم/ يشفى	sunburn	حرق شمس
playing sports	لعب الرياضة	presentation	عرض تقديمى
eating vegetables	اكل الخضراوات	spending time with friends	قضاء وقت مع الأصدقاء
reading books	قراءة الكتب	drinking plenty of water	شرب المياه بكمية كبيرة
getting enough sleep	النوم بشكل كافى		
visiting a doctor	زيارة الدكتور		
balanced diet	نظام غذائى متوازن	expert (s)	خبير / خبراء

Adjectives & opposites الصفات وعكسها



responsible	مسئول	irresponsible	غير مسئول
legal	شرعى - قانونى	illegal	غير قانونى
moral	أخلاقى	immoral	غير اخلاقى
polite	مؤدب	impolite	غير مؤدب
possible	ممكن	impossible	غير ممكن
fit	لائق بدنيا	unfit	غير لائق بدنيًا
regular	منتظم	irregular	غير منتظم

Pronunciation

F /f/ sound


frog ضفدع


scarf وشاح/كوفية


fan مروحة


fruit فاكهة

V /v/ sound


vet طبيب بيطرى


vegetables خضراوات


television تلفاز


van شاحنة مغلقة

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضِ
hope	يأمل	hoped
use	يستخدم	used
turn	يحول - يلف	turned
care	يعتنى بـ	cared
treat	يعالج	treated
kill	يقتل	killed
heal	يلتئم / يُشفى	healed
damage	يتلف	damaged

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضِ
have/has	مصاب بـ - يملك	had
hurt	يؤلم	hurt
fall	يقع / يسقط	fell
teach	يُدرس / يعلم	taught
give	يعطى	gave
become	يصبح	became
cut	يجرح	cut
know	يعرف	knew
get better	يتحسن	got better

Grammar قواعد لغوية

1 Verb to have — have / has مصاب بـ

- يستخدم الفعل **have / has** للتحدث عن الأمراض بمعنى مصاب بـ كالآتى:

I - you - we - they- اسم جمع → **have** } + اسم المرض .
He - she - it- اسم مفرد → **has**

- I **have** a headache. - He **has** a sore throat.

◉ وللنفى نستخدم الصيغة التالية:

I - you - we - they- اسم جمع → **don't** have } + اسم المرض .
He - she - it- اسم مفرد → **doesn't** have

- I **don't** have a headache. - He **doesn't** have a toothache.

◉ وللسؤال نستخدم الصيغة التالية:

Do + I - you - we - they - اسم جمع + **have** } + اسم المرض ?
Does + he - she - it اسم مفرد + **have**

- **Do** you **have** a cold? **Yes**, I **do**. / **No**, I **don't**.

- **Does** he **have** a cold? **Yes**, he **does**. / **No**, he **doesn't**.



مهارات الكتابة

Write a paragraph of forty (40) words

Answers to Paragraphs

Lesson 2

A toothache



1. I had a toothache yesterday. I told my father. My father took me to the dentist. The dentist gave me some medicine. I took the medicine. I felt better. My father told me not to eat many sweets.

Lesson 4

Honey



2. Honey is very useful. I enjoy eating it for breakfast. Honey contains things that can help to kill bacteria. It helps wound to heal more quickly. When you have a sore throat, you can have honey with lemon.

Lessons 5-6

Keeping healthy



3. It's important to keep healthy. You should do sports. Playing sport at school is a great way to exercise. You should drink plenty of water. The best thing to do is to eat healthy foods. You should have a balanced diet.

Activity Unit 8

A cold



4. I had a cold last week. I didn't feel better. I went to the doctor's. The doctor told me to stay home. The doctor gave me some pills. I took the pills. I felt better today. I stayed home for three days.

Al-Azhar Exercises الأسئلة الخاصة بالأزهر الشريف





A- Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer: استمع واختر:

1. I get up at .... o'clock. (six - seven - eight)
2. I like .... (apples - honey - oranges)

B- Language Functions

2 Read and complete the dialog: اقرأ وأكمل:

matter - doctor's - going

A : Where are you ------------------------------?

B : I'm going to the ------------------------------.

A : What's the ------------------------------?

B : I have a stomachache.

C- Reading Comprehension

3 Read and choose the correct answer: اقرأ واختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

Yesterday, I went to the club. I was very sad. My friend Samir hurt his ankle at football practice. My friend Yasser had an earache from swimming. They went to the hospital. I was worried about my friends.

Choose the correct answer:

1. Yesterday, I went to the .... (club - park - zoo)
2. I was very .... (happy - sad - nice)
3. My friend Samir hurt his .... at football practice (foot - arm - ankle)
4. My friend Yasser had an earache from .... (football - swimming - volleyball)
5. I was worried about my .... (brothers - sisters - friends)

D- Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. Do you .... an earache?
   a have   b has   c had
2. I have a pet ....
   a lion   b frog   c elephant
3. What .... the matter, Wael?
   a am   b are   c is
4. Doctors work in a ....
   a school   b hospital   c farm
5. No, I .... have a sore throat.
   a does   b do   c don't

E- The Reader

5 Choose the correct answer: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Youssef's job helps us to learn about the ....
   a future   b past   c present
2. Mom says, There's a beautiful nature .... there .
   a trail   b lake   c farm

F- Writing

6 Write a short paragraph of Four (4) sentences about:
اكتب فقرة إنشائية من ٤ جمل عن:

Water

- -
- -
- -
- -
- -



Activity on Unit 8

1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False): استمع واكتب (صواب) أو (خطأ):

استمع إلى النص اخر الكتاب

	True	False
1 I like unhealthy food.		
2 It is important to eat fruit and vegetables.		
3 We should do some exercise every day.		
4 It's very important to keep our body moving.		

2 Listen and complete: استمع واكمل:



1. Fares didn't go to .... yesterday.
2. Fares had an ....
3. Fares went to swimming ....
4. Fares took ....

3 Read and match (A) with (B): اقرأ وصل:

A	B
1 I hope they'll	a. the matter?
2 What's	b. can't see.
3 A tusk is	c. feel better tomorrow.
4 My tooth	d. a very long nose.
5 A blind man	e. a long pointed tooth.
	f. hurts.

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك ان يتعامل مع هذه الأسئلة

Unit 8 At the doctor's

4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

My name is Hazem. My uncle Hani is ill in the hospital in Giza. Our relatives visit him. There are many **patients**. The hospital treats patients from all over the country. The nurses are friendly. The doctors examine patients and give them medicine. My father and I visit him every day. There are many people in the hospital. The hospital is very crowded on Fridays. I come back home. I hope my uncle feel better.

A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The underlined word "**patients**" means .... people.

a well b sick c happy d tall

2. The hospital is in ....

a Cairo b Aswan c Giza d Luxor

B- Answer the following questions:

3. When is the hospital crowded? --

4. What do the doctors give patients? --

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملا صحيحة:

1. last - cut - week - I - knee - my. --

2. kill - Some - types of - bacteria - can - honey. --

3. worried - about - I'm - friends - my. --

4. stomach - Does - your - hurt? --

6 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للاتى:

1- it really hurts --

2- do you have a sore throat --

7 Write a paragraph of Forty (40) words using the following guiding elements: اكتب فقرة إنشائية من ٤٠ كلمة عن:

مجاب آخر الوحدة

A cold

cold - medicine

Theme 3



My society

Unit 9

My favorite animal

حيواني المفضل







Objectives of the Unit أهداف الوحدة

1. Listen, read, research and write about animals.
   - يستمع الطالب ويقرأ ويعمل بحث ويكتب عن الحيوانات.
2. Listen and read about a trip to a wildlife park.
   - يستمع الطالب ويقرأ عن رحلة إلى حديقة الحياة البرية.
3. Learn how to say /w/ and /v/ sounds.
   - يتعلم الطالب كيفية نطق حرفي /w/ و /v/.
4. Write an email about an unusual animal.
   - يكتب الطالب إيميل عن حيوان غير مألوف (غريب).
5. Research and make an infographic about animals in a habitat.
   - يقوم الطالب بعمل بحث ومخطط معلومات بياني عن حيوانات في بيئة ما.

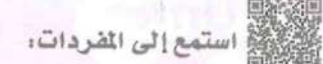






★ Wildlife الحياة البرية

Key vocabulary



استمع إلى المفردات:


panda
الباندا


bat
خفاش


kangaroo
حيوان الكونغر


lion
أسد




penguin
بطريق


dolphin
دولفين


snail
حلزون


parrot
ببغاء

Adjectives صفات

beautiful	جميل
colorful	زاهي/ كثير الألوان
friendly	ودود / أليف
different	مختلف
amazing	مدهش

strong	قوي
wonderful	رائع
awesome	مذهل
sweet	جميل
cool	رائع / جذاب

Other words  كلمات أخرى

wildlife park	حديقة الحياة البرية
shell	قوقعة
sleep upside down	ينام بالمقلوب
snow	جليد
ice	ثلج
fridge	ثلاجة
the rainforest	غابة مطيرة
a bit sad	حزين قليلًا

Australia	استراليا
Africa	أفريقيا
China	الصين
the ocean	المحيط
bamboo	نبات الخيزران
pouch	جراب/ كيس في أسفل بطن الكونغر
the dark	الظلام
rabbit	ارنب

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
jump	يقفز	jumped
live	يعيش	lived
stay	يمكث	stayed
want	يريد	wanted
enjoy	يستمتع	enjoyed
repeat	يردد	repeated

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
fly	يطير	flew
swim	يعوم	swam
sleep	ينام	slept
hide	يختبئ	hid
feed	يطعم	fed
see	يرى	saw

Study the following

1. I had a wonderful day out yesterday with my family.
- لقد قضيت يومًا رائعًا في الخارج مع عائلتي بالأمس.
2. I went to the new wildlife park.
- ذهبت إلى حديقة الحياة البرية الجديدة.
3. The kangaroos were interesting, too.
- كانت حيوانات الكونغر مثيرة للاهتمام أيضًا.
4. When they are little, they can sit inside their mom's pouch.
- عندما يكونوا صغارًا ، يجلسون داخل جراب أمهم.
5. We said some words for them to repeat.
- قلنا لهم بعض الكلمات ليرددوها.
6. They were all hiding and I couldn't see them in the dark.
- كانوا جميعًا مختبئون ولم استطع رؤيتهم فى الظلام.
7. Could you go near the lions?
- هل استطعت أن تذهب بالقرب من الأسود؟
8. They were in a special place inside.
- كانوا (البطريق) في مكان خاص بالداخل.

9 They can swim so well. - يمكنهم السباحة جيدًا.

10 I have a shell. I don't have legs or arms. - لدي قوقعة ليس لدي أرجل أو أيدي.

11 I live in Australia. I jump on two legs. - أعيش في استراليا. اقفز على رجلين.

12 I fly at night. I sleep upside down on trees. - اطير فى الليل. انام بالمقلوب على الأشجار.

13 I swim in a group with my family in the ocean. - اسبح فى مجموعة مع عائلتى فى المحيط.

1 Listen and read. Then say the words: استمع واقرأ. ثم قل الكلمات:

1 
kangaroo

2 
panda

3 
bat

4 
lion

5 
penguin

6 
dolphin

7 
snail

8 
parrot

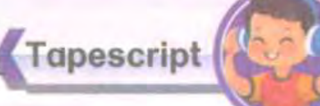
2 Read the clues. Write the correct animals:

اقرأ مفاتيح حل الألغاز. اكتب الحيوانات الصحيحة:

1. I live in the garden. I have a shell. I don't have legs or arms. snail
2. I live in Australia. I jump on two legs. kangaroo
3. I fly at night. I sleep upside down on trees. ....
4. I live on ice and snow. I'm black and white. I can swim, but I can't fly. ....
5. I am a bird. I am very beautiful and colorful. I live in the rainforest. ....
6. I live in Africa. I'm a very big cat. I am very strong. ....
7. I am very friendly. I swim in a group with my family in the ocean. ....
8. I live in China. I eat bamboo. I'm big, and black and white. ....

3 Read. Where did Ramez go yesterday? اقرأ. أين ذهب رامز بالأمس؟

استمع إلى النص:



Ramez : Hi! I had a wonderful day out yesterday with my family.
Ayman : Where did you go?
Ramez : I went to the new wildlife park(1) - it was awesome(2)!
Ayman : What did you see? Could you go near the lions?
Ramez : No, we stayed in the car. But we could see them through the trees. The kangaroos were interesting, too. When they are little, they can sit inside their mom's pouch(3) - it's so sweet!
Ayman : What birds did you see?
Ramez : Lots, but my favorites were the parrots. They were so beautiful and they could talk! We said some words for them to repeat!
Ayman : What about animals that like the cold? Did you see any?
Ramez : Yes, penguins! They were in a special(4) place inside. It was cold, like a fridge(5). We fed them some fish! I love penguins - they can swim so well and they look so cool!
Ayman : Wow! Was there anything you wanted to see but couldn't?
Ramez : The bats. I'm doing a project on bats at school, so I really wanted to see them! But they were all hiding(6) and I couldn't see them in the dark!
Ayman : Oh well, it sounds(7) amazing! I've got to feed my rabbit now - that's the most wildlife I'll see today!

Arabic Meaning
1- حديقة الحياة البرية
2- رائع
3- جراب الكنجر
4- خاص
5- ثلاجة
6- مختبئون
7- يبدو

4 Complete the summary with the words in the box:

أكمل الملخص بكلمات من القائمة:

project - sad - parrots - park - enjoyed - lions

Yesterday, Ramez went to a wildlife ❶ ...park... with his family. He ❷ .... it very much. They saw lots of different animals like ❸ ...., kangaroos, and penguins. He saw his favorite birds, the ❹ .... He was a bit ❺ .... because he didn't see the bats and he's doing a ❻ .... on them at school.

Activities



1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False): استمع واكتب (صح) أو (خطأ):

استمع إلى النص آخر الكتاب

	True	False
1 My uncle has a rabbit.		
2 Pingo is the parrot's name.		
3 Pingo can talk and repeat words.		
4 Pingo's legs are beautiful.		

2 Read and match (A) with (B): اقرأ وصل:

A	B
1 I went to	a. a project about wildlife.
2 Ramez's doing	b. on two legs.
3 The lion is	c. eats bamboo.
4 A kangaroo jumps	d. but it can't fly.
5 A penguin can swim,	e. a wildlife park yesterday.
	f. a very big cat.

3 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

اعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

1. doesn't - legs - A snail - or - have - arms.

----

2. yesterday - go - Ramez - Where - did?

----

3. lives - in - The - China - panda.

----

4. see - birds - What - you - did?

----

4 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للاتى:

1. i couldn't see bats in the dark ----------------------------

2. could you go near the lions ----------------------------

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك فى التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة.



Lesson 2 ★ What could you do? Part 1



Vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات:



quickly	بسرعة	busy	مشغول
very fast	بسرعة جدًا	German	اللغة الألمانية
use a computer	يستخدم كمبيوتر	Italian	اللغة الإيطالية
play chess	يلعب الشطرنج	French	اللغة الفرنسية
amazed	مندهش	France	فرنسا
speak English	يتحدث اللغة الإنجليزية		

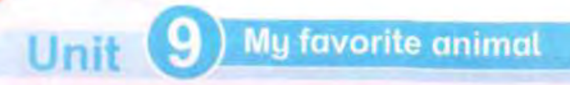
Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Irregular verbs

Present	مضارع	Past ماضٍ	Present	مضارع	Past ماضٍ
speak	يتحدث	spoke	take	يأخذ	took
fly	يطير	flew	ride	يركب	rode
run	يجرى	ran	read	يقرأ	read
drive	يقود	drove	swim	يعوم	swam

Study the following

1. Birds can fly. - تستطيع الطيور أن تطير.
2. Lions can run very fast. - تستطيع الأسود الجري بسرعة جدًا.
3. Bats can sleep upside down on trees. - تنام الخفافيش بالمقلوب على الأشجار.
4. Snails can live in shells. - تعيش الحلزونات في قواقع.



Grammar قواعد لغوية

1 للتعبير عن: استطاعة فعل شيء في الحاضر نستخدم:

فاعل + can يستطيع أن + inf فعل فى المصدر.

- Birds **can** fly.
- I **can play** basketball.

في النفي نستخدم: فاعل + can't لا يستطيع أن + inf فعل فى المصدر.

- Pandas **can't** drive a car.
- I **can't speak** Italian.

في السؤال نستخدم: Can + فاعل + inf فعل فى المصدر?

- **Can** you play tennis?

لاحظ لا نضع (to) بعد can / can't

2 للتعبير عن: استطاعة فعل شيء في الماضي نستخدم:

فى الاثبات: فاعل + could + inf فعل فى المصدر.

- I **could** run fast last year.

فى النفى: فاعل + couldn't + inf فعل فى المصدر.

- I **couldn't** take the bus so I had to walk.

فى السؤال: Could + فاعل + inf فعل فى المصدر?

- **Could** you play the piano last year?

لاحظ لا نضع (to) بعد could / couldn't

ويمكن استخدام could / couldn't مع when كما يلي:

When عندما + فاعل + ماضي بسيط, + فاعل + {could / couldn't} + inf فعل في المصدر.

- **When** I **lived** in France, I **could speak** French.
- OR: I **could speak** French **when** I **lived** in France.

لاحظ استخدام comma (,) إذا بدأنا الجملة بـ When

Could + فاعل + inf فعل في المصدر + when + فاعل + الماضي البسيط?

- **Could** you ride a bike when you **were** three?

1 Read and match: اقرأ وصل:

A

1. birds
2. lions
3. snails
4. bats

B

a. can live in shells
b. can sleep upside down on trees
c. can fly
d. can run very fast

2 Write can or can't: اكتب يستطيع أو لا يستطيع:

1. Bats ....can.... fly very fast.
2. Snails .... move quickly.
3. Parrots .... fly.
4. Pandas .... drive a car.

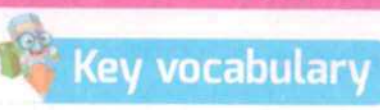
3 Write could or couldn't: اكتب استطاع أو لم يستطع:

1. When I was two, I couldn't use a computer.
2. I .... read when I was one.
3. My sister .... play chess when she was five, but she .... when she was eight.
4. My cousin .... run when he was a baby.
5. I .... swim when I was a baby, and everyone was amazed.
6. .... you speak English when you were five?

4 Circle the correct word: ضع دائرة حول الكلمة الصحيحة:

1. I couldn't say anything in German last year, but now I ....
   a can b can't c could
2. Last year, he .... run very quickly, but now he can.
   a can't b could c couldn't
3. .... you play the piano when you were a child?
   a Can b Could c Can't
4. Sorry, I .... help you with your homework. I'm busy.
   a can b can't c could

★ The travelers and the tree
Part 2



Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات:











nuts	exhausted	branch of a tree	trunk of a tree
مكسرات	منهك (متعب جدًا)	فرع شجرة	جذع شجرة

wide	واسع - عريض
famous	مشهور
shelter	مأوى
rest	يستريح / راحة
comfortable	مريح
save	ينقذ
angry	غاضب

shade	ظل
traders	تجار
meeting point	مكان للتجمع (للقاء)
breeze	نسيم (رياح خفيفة)
useless	عديم الفائدة
ungrateful	ناكر الجميل
unkind	غير عطوف

Definitions تعريفات

a breeze	نسيم	a little wind
useless	عديم الفائدة	we can't use it
ungrateful	ناكر للجميل	don't thank others for doing something good.
comfortable	مريح	it's nice to sit on or wear.
a meeting point	نقطة التقاء/تجمع	somewhere where people meet.

Study the following

1. Once there was a very big old tree in a hot, dry land.
   - كان يوجد شجرة كبيرة الحجم والعمر فى يوم حار وجاف.
2. Its trunk was very wide and it had many green branches.
   - كان جذعها (الشجرة) عريض جدًا ولديها الكثير من الفروع الخضراء.
3. It was a meeting point for traders.
   - كانت نقطة (مكان) لقاء للتجار.

4. They enjoyed the shade and the cool breeze.
   - استمتعوا بالظل والنسيم الرائع.
5. As they were exhausted, they soon fell asleep.
   - بمجرد أن شعروا بالتعب الشديد، خلدوا إلى النوم في الحال.
6. There are no nuts or fruit on its branches.
   - لا يوجد مكسرات أو فواكهه في فروعها.
7. You came to me feeling hot and tired.
   - اتيت إلى وأنت تشعر بالحر والإرهاق.
8. I gave you a cool, comfortable place to sleep and I probably saved your life.
   - اعطيتك مكان مريح ورائع للنوم وربما انقذت حياتك.
9. The travelers looked around them and saw the tree was correct and felt very sorry.
   - نظر المسافرون حولهم ورأوا أن الشجرة على حق وشعروا بالندم.
10. It's important to give value to the small things in our lives.
    - من المهم أن نعطى قيمة للأشياء الصغيرة فى حياتنا.

1 Match the words to the photos. Check in a dictionary:

صل الكلمات بالصور. تأكد من القاموس:



2 Read and listen to a fable by Aesop. Why was the tree angry?

اقرأ واستمع إلى اسطورة خرافية كتبها "إيسوب". لماذا كانت الشجرة غاضبة؟



استمع إلى النص:

Once there was a very big old tree in a hot, dry land. It had lived for many years. Its trunk was very wide and it had many green branches[1]. It was famous because it was the only tree where it lived, and it gave shelter[2] and rest[3] to hundreds of travelers as they moved across the country.

It was near four towns and many villages in its area[4] and was a meeting point[5] for traders.

One day two travelers, who were new to the area, were walking across the field and saw the tree. It was a very hot, dry day and one of them said, "Let's stop under that tree, where there's some shade[6]." "That's a very good idea," said his friend. They rested under the tree and drank some water. They then enjoyed the shade and the cool breeze[7]. As they were exhausted[8], they soon fell asleep.

When they woke up[9], one of the travelers felt hungry. Neither of them[10] had any food in their bags so they looked up at the branches of the tree. "This tree is useless[11]," one of them said. "It has no food for us - there are no nuts[12] or fruit on its branches." "But it has shade and it's keeping us cool," said the other.

But the tree heard the first traveler's words and it was angry. "How can you be so ungrateful[13]?" It said, "You came to me feeling hot and tired. I gave you a cool, comfortable[14] place to sleep and I probably[15] saved[16] your life. Look, there is no other cool place to sleep near here." The travelers looked around them and saw the tree was correct[17] and felt very sorry.

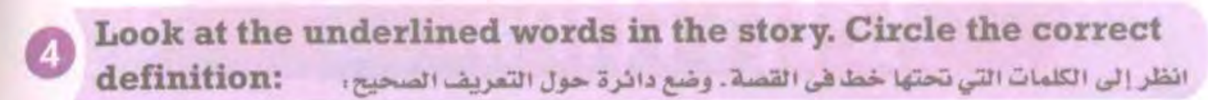
Arabic Meaning

١- افرع
٢- مأوى
٣- راحة
٤- منطقة
٥- مكان للتجمع
٦- ظل
٧- نسيم
٨- منهك
٩- استيقظ
١٠- ولا واحد منهم
١١- عديم الفائدة
١٢- مكسرات
١٣- ناكر الجميل
١٤- مريح
١٥- من المحتمل
١٦- انقذ
١٧- صحيح

3 Decide if the sentences are True (T) or False (F). Correct the false sentences in your notebook:

حدد إذا كانت الجمل صحيحة أو خاطئة. صحح الجمل الخاطئة فى كراستك:

1. The tree was in a field with many other trees. F
2. It was a cool, rainy day.
3. The travelers were tired.
4. The travelers were thirsty.
5. Both the travelers were ungrateful to the tree.
6. In the end the travelers were sad about being unkind to the tree.



4 Look at the underlined words in the story. Circle the correct definition:

انظر إلى الكلمات التي تحتها خط فى القصة. وضع دائرة حول التعريف الصحيح:

1. A breeze is a little (wind) / lake.
2. When something is useless, we **can / can't** use it.
3. When someone is ungrateful, they **thank / don't thank** others for doing something good.
4. When something is comfortable, it's **nice / not nice** to sit on or wear.
5. A meeting point is somewhere where people **leave / meet**.

5 Work in pairs. Answer the questions.

اعمل فى ثنائيات. اجب عن الأسئلة:

1. **What do you think the moral of the story is?**

فى رأيك ما الدرس الأخلاقي فى القصة؟

a. It's important to plant lots of trees.
b. It's important to give value to the small things in our lives.
c. It's important to take food when you travel.

2. **What do you think the travelers said to the tree at the end?**

فى رأيك ماذا قال المسافرين للشجرة فى النهاية؟

6 Work in pairs. Answer the questions. Use the photos below to help you with your answers:

اعمل فى ثنائيات. أجب عن الأسئلة. استخدام الصور بالأسفل لتساعدك فى إجابتك.

1. Why are trees important for humans?

- -

2. Why are trees important for animals?

- -

3. Why is it important to plant trees?

- -











Activities

1 Listen and complete: استمع واكمل:



1. At five, I could swim and ....
2. My brother was .... years younger than me.
3. Now, I can use a ....
4. My brother can swim and ....

2 Read and match (A) with (B): اقرأ وصل:

A	B
1 A meeting point is	a. it had many green branches.
2 I couldn't read	b. shade and the cool breeze.
3 They were exhausted,	c. the tree angry?
4 Why was	d. somewhere where people meet.
5 Trees give us	e. when I was two.
	f. so they fell asleep.

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

My name's Nadia. I have two brothers and a sister. When we were children, we could do many things. My brothers Adel and Walid could play football. I could play the piano.

My sister, Soha could run. Walid couldn't do his homework. I helped him. My mother could cook delicious food, but we couldn't cook any food. Now we grow up and we can cook all kinds of food and help our mother.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Nadia has ....
   a no sisters b a sister c three sisters d two sisters
2. .... couldn't do homework.
   a Nadia b Walid c Adel d Soha

B. Answer the following questions:

3. Summarize the first paragraph in one sentence.
   -
4. Could Nadia play the piano?
   -

4 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

اعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

1. couldn't - speak - We - German.
   -
2. rested - under - They - tree - the.
   -
3. ungrateful - be - How - so - can - you?
   -
4. trees - for - Why - humans - are - important?
   -

5 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للاتي:

1. i couldn't take the bus
   -
2. What s the moral lesson of the story
   -

6 Write a paragraph of Forty (40) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٤٠) كلمة عن:



Things you could do when you were little

walk - ride a bike

- -
- -
- -
- -



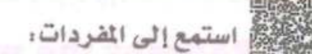
Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك في التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة.

Lesson 3

★ CLIL Science (Part 1) The water cycle
دورة الماء

Vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات:





clouds
سحب


the sun
الشمس


evaporation
التبخر

precipitation
الهطول (مطر / جليد)


groundwater
مياه جوفية

The water cycle
دورة الماء





river
نهر

stream
جدول مائي

Other words كلمات أخرى

planet Earth	كوكب الأرض
faucet	صنبور
process	عملية
field	حقل
ocean	محيط
rainwater	مياه المطر
snow	جليد

ice	ثلج
go straight	تذهب مباشرة
water vapor	بخار الماء
air	هواء
get cooler	تصبح باردة
ground	الأرض

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
call	يسمي	called
change	يغير	changed
start	يبدأ	started
form	يشكل	formed
warm	يدفئ	warmed

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
fall	يقع	fell
become	يصبح	became
smell	يشم	smelt
get	يصبح	got
rise	يرتفع	rose



Study the following

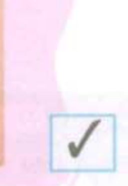
1. Rain falls from clouds in the sky.
- يسقط المطر من السحب في السماء.
2. Some rainwater goes straight into the ground.
- بعض من مياه الأمطار تذهب إلى الأرض بطريقة مباشرة.
3. The sun warms the rainwater and it becomes water vapor.
- الشمس تدفئ مياه الأمطار وتصبح بخار الماء.
4. As the clouds become bigger, the water in them gets heavier.
- بمجرد أن تكبر السحب يصبح الماء بها أثقل.
5. The clouds get heavier and rain falls again.
- تصبح السحب أثقل ويسقط المطر مرة أخرى.

1 Work with a partner. Look and check (✓) the things we need water for. Can you think of more examples? Why is water so important?

أعمل مع زميلك. انظر وضع علامة (✓) على الأشياء التي تحتاج فيها الماء. هل تستطيع أن تفكر في أمثلة أكثر؟ لماذا الماء مهم جدًا؟

1  ✓

2  ☐

3   ☐

4  ☐

5  ☐

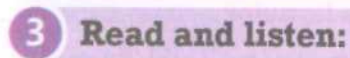
6  ☐

2 Work with a partner. Discuss. أعمل مع زميلك. ناقش:



1. Look at the photo of planet Earth - how much do you think is water?
2. Where does water come from? Circle the words below which are made of water.

house	river	car	lake
snow	ice	cat	rain
faucet	cloud	ocean	field



3 Read and listen: اقرأ واستمع: استمع إلى النص:

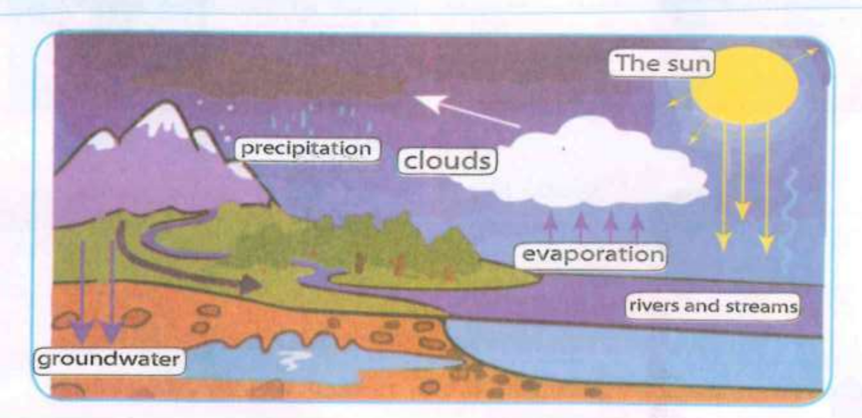
Where does our water come from?

Rain falls from clouds(1) in the sky. Some rainwater goes straight into the ground(2). But a lot of it goes into streams(3), rivers, lakes, and then the ocean. This process(4) is called precipitation(5).

Some of the rainwater changes - the sun warms it and it becomes water vapor(6). This process is called **"evaporation"**. We cannot see or smell the water vapor and it doesn't stay on the ground. It rises in the air and, as it gets cooler high up in the sky, it changes back into water and forms clouds. As the clouds become bigger, the water in them gets heavier(7).

When the water in the clouds gets heavier, it falls to the ground, and the cycle starts again.

Arabic Meaning
١- السحب
٢- الأرض
٣- جداول مائية
٤- عملية
٥- الهطول
٦- بخار الماء
٧- أثقل



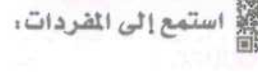
4 Complete the sentences with words from Exercise 3:

اكمل الجمل باستخدام الكلمات في التمرين ٣:

1. .... falls from the clouds.
2. The .... warms the rainwater and it becomes water vapor.
3. The .... rises and changes into water.
4. The water forms ....
5. The coulds get .... and rain falls again.

★ CLIL: Social studies (Part 2)
دراسات اجتماعية





Key vocabulary استمع إلى المفردات:

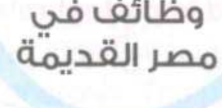
soldier جندي



pharaoh فرعون



scribe كاتب





artisan نحات / رسام

farmer فلاح

in charge	مسئول	guarded	حكمت
nobles	النبلاء	letters	خطابات
taxes	الضرائب	records	سجلات
the army	الجيش	chariots	مركبات حربية قديمة
trader	تاجر		



Other words كلمات أخرى

role	دور	kingdom	مملكة
society	مجتمع	jewelry	مجوهرات
closely	بشكل مقرب	goods	سلع

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة			Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة		
Present	مضارع	Past ماضٍ	Present	مضارع	Past ماضٍ
produce	ينتج	produced	buy	يشتري	bought
rule	يحكم	ruled	sell	يبيع	sold
organize	ينظم	organized	take	يأخذ	took
need	يحتاج	needed	grow	يزرع	grew
work	يعمل	worked	keep	يحافظ على	kept
collect	يجمع	collected			
guard	يحكم	guarded			

Study the following

1. Lots of different people played important roles in Ancient Egyptian society.
- أدى الكثير من الناس المختلفة أدوار هامة في المجتمع المصري القديم.
2. The person in charge was the Pharaoh.
- كان الشخص المسئول هو الفرعون.
3. He worked closely with nobles.
- عمل بالقرب من النبلاء.
4. The nobles collected taxes and organized soldiers.
- جمع النبلاء الضرائب ونظموا الجنود.
5. Soldiers were busy keeping Egypt safe.
- كان الجنود مشغولون بالمحافظة علي مصر في أمان.
6. The army was strong and the soldiers were good at their jobs.
- كان الجيش قوي والجنود جيدين في وظائفهم.
7. Scribes wrote many different things like letters, records and important papers.
- كتب الكُتاب الكثير من الأشياء المختلفة مثل الخطابات والسجلات والأوراق الهامة.
8. Traders were the people who bought and sold everything in Ancient Egyptian society.
- التجار هم الناس الذين كانوا يشتروا ويبيعوا كل شيء في مجتمع القدماء المصريين.
9. Artisans took the materials from the traders and made them into things for people.
- أخذوا النحاتيين المواد الخام من التجار وصنعوا منها أشياء للناس.

★ Ancient Egyptian Society
مجتمع مصر القديمة

1 Read and listen. Who are the people in the photos?

اقرأ واستمع. ما هم الناس في الصور ؟

1 

soldier

2 

----

3 


استمع إلى النص:

Lots of different people played important roles(1) in Ancient Egyptian society. The person in charge was the pharaoh. The pharaoh needed lots of people to help him. He worked closely(2) with nobles(3), and they looked after different things. The nobles collected taxes and organized soldiers.

Soldiers were busy keeping Egypt safe. As Egypt was such an important and very rich country, the soldiers guarded the kingdom(4). The army was strong, and the soldiers were good at their jobs.

Scribes were very important because they were usually the only people who could read and write. They trained(5) for about 12 years before they wrote on papyrus(6). They wrote many different things like letters, records, and important papers. Without the scribes, we would know almost nothing about Ancient Egypt today.

Traders were the people who bought and sold everything in Ancient Egyptian society - food, clothes, jewelry, soldiers' uniforms, ships, and materials(7) for building(8).

Artisans took the materials from the traders and made them into things for people to use, like furniture(9), chariots(10), and clothes.

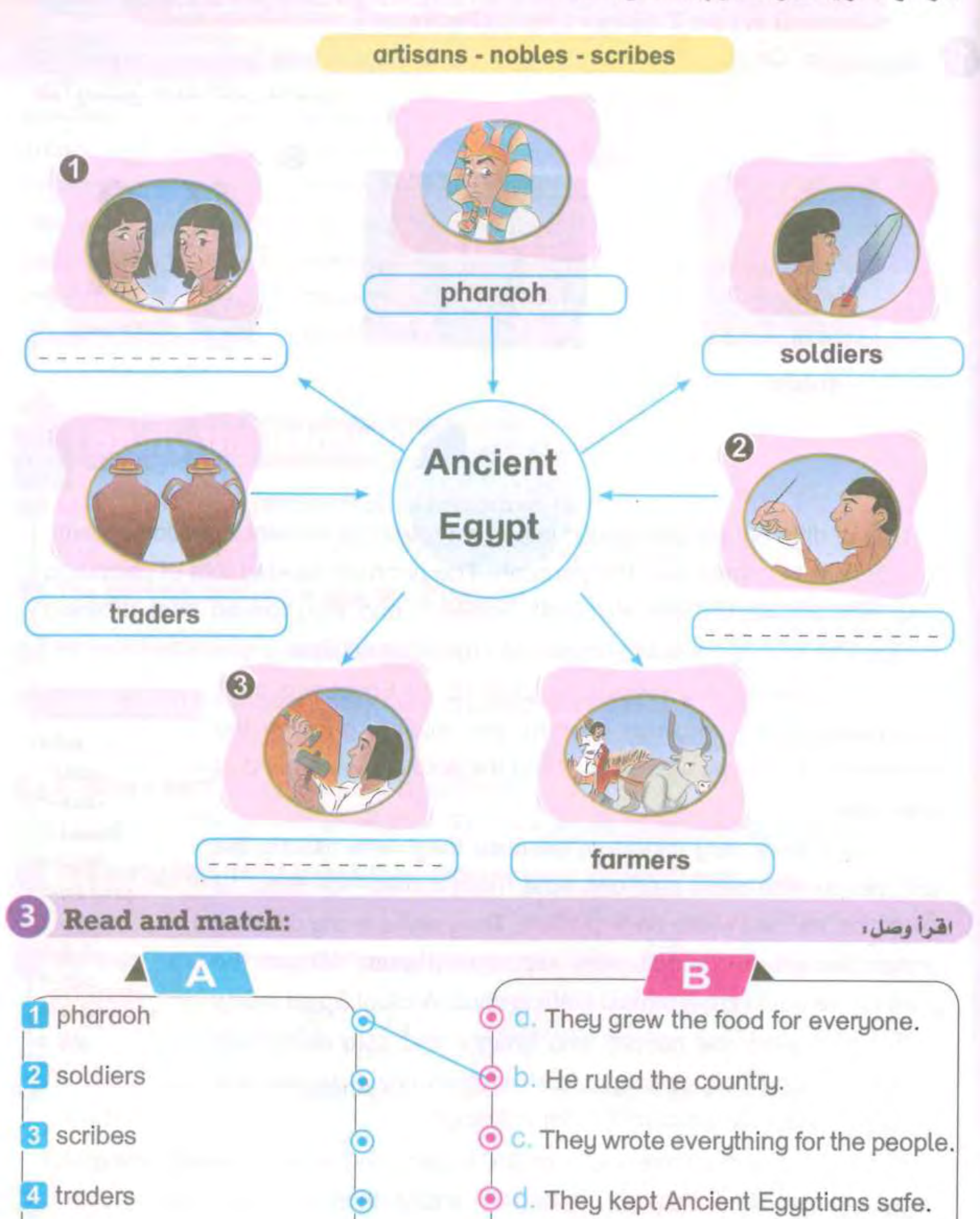
Farmers produced the food that was eaten(11) by the pharaoh, the nobles, the soldiers, the scribes, the traders, and the artisans.

Arabic Meaning
- ١- أدوار
- ٢- بالقرب
- ٣- النبلاء
- ٤- المملكة
- ٥- تدربوا
- ٦- ورق البردي
- ٧- مواد خام
- ٨- البناء
- ٩- الأثاث
- ١٠- مركبات حربية
- ١١- يؤكل

2 Read again. Complete the diagram with the words in the box:

اقرأ مرة أخرى. أكمل الشكل بكلمات من القائمة :

artisans - nobles - scribes



3 Read and match:

اقرأ وصل:

A	B
1 pharaoh	a. They grew the food for everyone.
2 soldiers	b. He ruled the country.
3 scribes	c. They wrote everything for the people.
4 traders	d. They kept Ancient Egyptians safe.
5 farmers	e. They bought and sold all the goods.

Activities

1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False):

استمع واكتب (صح) أو (خطأ) :

استمع إلى النص آخر الكتاب

	True	False
1 We should use too much water.		
2 We need water for plants.		
3 We need water in our life.		
4 We must save water.		

2 Read and match (A) with (B):

اقرأ وصل:

A	B
1 Some of the rainwater goes	a. collected taxes.
2 The soldiers were	b. or smell the water vapor.
3 The nobles	c. come from?
4 We can't see	d. straight into the ground.
5 Where does water	e. good at their jobs.
	f. the clouds get heavier.

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة

Yesterday, I went to the Alexandria Library and read a book about the Ancient Egyptian society. I learnt many things about Ancient Egyptians. There were many important jobs. Each job did useful things to the Ancient Egyptian society. When we go to the museums and temples, we can see how the Ancient Egyptians were great people.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Each job did .... things to the Ancient Egyptian society.

a useless b useful c bad d unimportant

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك في التعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

2. We can see in the .... how the Ancient Egyptians were great.

a parks b temples c houses d hospitals

B. Answer the following questions:

3. Where did the writer go yesterday?

----

4. What did the writer read at the library?

----

4 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

اعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

1. water - Why - important - is - so?

----

2. from - falls - Rain - clouds - the.

----

3. wrote - everything - Scribes - the people - for.

----

4. safe - busy - Soldiers - keeping - were - Egypt.

----

5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

1. traders bought and sold everything

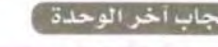
----

2. which things are made of water

----

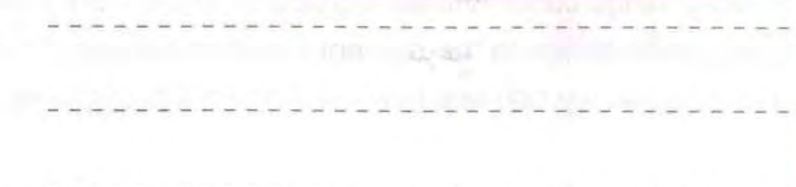
6 Write a paragraph of Forty (40) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٤٠) كلمة عن:



Jobs in Ancient Egypt

farmers - soldiers









This is so interesting

Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات:

famous	مشهور
excellent	ممتاز
professional	محترف
clear	واضح

Arsenal	ارسنال (نادى انجليزى)
relax	يسترخي
ring	يرن

Language Notes ملاحظات لغوية

1 Suffix (-er) اللاحقة

- نضيف (-er) إلى نهاية الكلمة أو الفعل لتكوين الاسم:

Word الكلمة		Noun الاسم	
teach	يدرس	teacher	مدرس
read	يقرأ	reader	قارئ
farm	مزرعة	farmer	فلاح
football	كرة القدم	footballer	لاعب كرة قدم
travel	يسافر	traveler	مسافر
climb	يتسلق	climber	متسلق

2 Adjectives end with (ing) - (ed) صفات تنتهي بـ (ed) أو بـ (ing)

- نضيف (ing) أو (ed) إلى نهاية الفعل لتكوين الصفة.
- إذا انتهى الفعل بحرف (e) يحذف ونضيف (ing) أو (ed).
- لاحظ الصفات التي تنتهي بـ (ed) توصف الشئ أو الشخص الذى يتأثر أو يشعر بالصفة أما الصفات التي تنتهي بـ (ing) تصف الشيء أو الشخص الذى يسبب الصفة.

Verbs أفعال		Adjectives with (ed) صفات تنتهي بـ (ed)		Adjectives with (ing) صفات تنتهي بـ (ing)	
annoy	يزعج	annoyed	منزعج	annoying	مزعج
amaze	يندهش	amazed	مندهش	amazing	مدهش
interest	يهتم	interested	مهتم	interesting	شيق
tire	يُتعب	tired	مُتعَب	tiring	مُتعب
surprise	يندهش	surprised	مندهش	surprising	مفاجئ

1 Listen and repeat the words: استمع وردد الكلمات :

2 Listen again and write the (er) words: استمع مرة أخرى واكتب الكلمات بـ (er):

استمع إلى النص آخر الكتاب







t_ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ r_ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ c_ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _







f_ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ f_ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ t_ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _

3 Complete the sentences with words from Exercise 2:

أكمل الجمل بكلمات من التمرين رقم ٢ :

1. My grandfather was a great .... He traveled to many great places around the world.
2. A famous Egyptian .... in England is Mohamed Elneny - he plays for Arsenal.
3. My favorite .... is Miss Salwa - she's very friendly and kind in the classroom.
4. My cousin is a very good .... - he reads about 20 books a year.

4 Add (-ed) and (-ing) to the verbs to make adjectives:

أضف (ing) أو (ed) للأفعال لتكوين الصفات:

1. annoy → annoyed , annoying
2. amaze → .... , ...
3. interest → .... , ...
4. tire → .... , ...
5. surprise → .... , ...
6. interest → .... , ...

5 Complete the crossword with words from Exercises 1 - 4

أكمل الكلمات المتقاطعة بالكلمات من التمارين ١ - ٤ :

Across:

1. Mr Mahmoud is an excellent .... He plants the best tomatoes in town!
3. That long walk was very .... I can't wait to get home and relax!
5. My uncle's a professional .... He goes up some very high mountains.

Down:

2. I find my phone really .... when it rings while I'm sleeping.
4. Mr Eissa is a great.................... . He makes everything clear in our lessons.



Pronunciation

استمع إلى النص:

W w **Vv**

- لاحظ نطق حرفي (Vv) / (Ww) من الأصوات التي تهتز فيها الأحبال الصوتية (voiced sound) حيث تضع يديك علي الحنجرة وتشعر باهتزاز عند نطقهم.

/Vv/

- لاحظ عند نطق حرف (Vv) نضغط بالأسنان العليا علي الجزء السفلي للشفاة.





vet طبيب بيطري

violin آلـة الكمان

volcano بـركان

vase زهـريـة

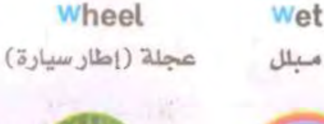
vest سترة (صديري)

village قرية

/Ww/

- لاحظ عند نطق حرف /Ww/ نعمل دائرة ضيقة بالشفتين.





wet مبلل

wheel عجلة (إطار سيارة)

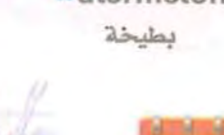
winter الشتاء

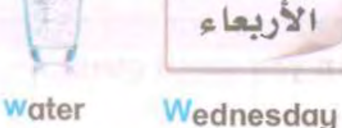


west الغـرب

watermelon بطيخة

whale حـوت





water ماء

Wednesday الأربعاء

1 Listen and circle the word you hear. Then listen again and check:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الكلمة التي تسمعها. ثم استمع مرة أخرى وتأكد:

استمع إلى النص أخر الكتاب:

1. west / vest
2. wheel / whale
3. vase / vest
4. vet / wet
5. violin / volcano
6. water / winter

2 Listen and write the words:

استمع واكتب الكلمات:

استمع إلى النص أخر الكتاب

1. .... 2. .... 3. ....

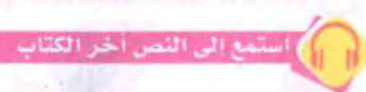
4. .... 5. .... 6. ....

7. .... 8. .... 9. ....

3 Listen and write. Then listen again and check:

استمع واكتب. ثم استمع مرة أخرى وتأكد:

استمع إلى النص أخر الكتاب



Last ❶................ I decided(1) to travel ❷................ in my boat wearing my ❸................ . I was looking for a ❹................ but I had some problems(2). I met some ❺................ and they turned over(3) my boat. I had to sit on my ❻................ to stay afloat(4)! I ate ❼................ to stay healthy and I came to shore(5). I didn't find the ❽................ , but I met some vets and they took me home to my ❾................!

Arabic Meaning

١- قرر
٢- مشكلات
٣- قلبوا
٤- يبقى عائمًا
٥- الشاطئ

4 Listen and repeat the tongue twister. Can you say it quickly:

استمع وردد الكلمات أو الجمل التى تسبب تنافر أو تلعثم اللسان. هل تستطيع أن تقولها بسرعة؟

- يقصد بـ (tongue twister) تنافر أو تلعثم اللسان من أجل توضيح مدى السرعة التي يمكنك بها التحدث بمجموعة من الكلمات لها نفس الحروف والتي يصعب نطقها معًا في جملة واحدة.



Waleed made vases on very wet wheels for vets.

صنع وليد زهريات علي عجلات مبللة للأطباء البيطريين.

Activities



1 Listen and complete:

استمع واكمل:



1. My father lives in a ....
2. Yesterday, he .... up early.
3. He put the cat in his ....
4. He gave it some .... and food.

2 Read and match (A) with (B):

اقرأ وصل:

A	B
1 My uncle goes up	a. on the violin.
2 Hisham likes playing	b. the best tomatoes in town.
3 She is my favorite teacher,	c. very tiring.
4 Mr Mahmoud plants	d. she's kind and friendly.
5 That long walk was	e. some very high mountains.
	f. really amazed.

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

My grandfather could do many things when he was young. He went to the library once a week. He was a good reader. He read about 30 books every year. He could also climb very high mountains. He was a great traveler. He traveled to many places around the world. When I grow up, I want to be like my grandfather.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. My grandfather could climb high ....

   a places   b walls   c mountains   d trees

2. My grandfather read about .... books every year.

   a thirteen   b thirty   c sixty   d three

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك فى التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة.



B. Answer the following questions:

3. Why did the grandfather go to the library?

----

4. Where did the grandfather travel?

----

4 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

اعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

1. got - home - relax - I - to.

----

2. interested - I'm - history - very - in.

----

3. four - The - has - wheels - car.

----

4. makes - clear - Who - everything - lessons - in?

----

5. professional - My - climber - is - uncle - a.

----

6. kind - your - friendly - teacher - Is - and?

----

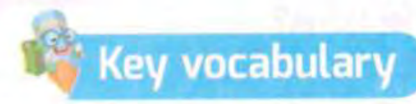
5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للاتى:

1. mohamed Elneny is a famous egyptian footballer.

----

2. do you like eating watermelons



Lessons 5&6 ★ Writing



Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات:

unusual animal	حيوان غير مألوف (غريب)	nickname	اسم الشهرة / لقب / كناية
dugong	الأطوم (بقر البحر)	sea cow	بقرة البحر
	(حيوان بحري كبير الحجم من فصيلة الثدييات)	sea bed	قاع البحر
		infographic	مخطط معلومات بياني

Other words كلمات أخرى

email	بريد إلكترونى	bison	ثور أمريكي
cute	جميل	warm	دافىء
basketball	كرة السلة	cool	بارد
note	ملاحظة	percent	نسبة مئوية
habitat	بيئة الحيوان أو النبات	surface	سطح
polar	قطبي	eagle	طائر العقاب
grassland	ارض عشبية	wolf	ذئب

Writing an email كتابة الإيميل

١. عند كتابة الايميل نبدأ بـ: **From +** اسم المرسل

ثم نكتب: **To +** اسم المرسل إليه

٢. نبدأ الايميل بكلمات (عزيزي **Dear**) أو (أهلا **Hi**) ثم اسم المرسل إليه.

٣. ثم نقول لماذا نكتب الايميل باستخدام عبارات مثل:

- **Just a quick note** مجرد ملحوظة سريعة
- **Thanks for writing to me.** شكراً للكتابة لى.

٤. أعطي فكرة عن الموضوع ثم توسع في شرحه.

٥. عندما تكتب لصديقك استخدم لغة غيررسمية مثل:

- **awesome / cool.** :كلمات مثل / - **I'm** :اختصارات مثل
- **How's life? / How are things?** :عبارات مثل

٦. اختم الإيميل بعبارات مثل:

- **Write soon.** أكتب لى فى أقرب وقت.
- **Hope to hear from you soon.** أتمنى أن اعرف أخبارك قريباً.
- **See you soon.** اراك قريباً.
- **All the best.** كل الأمنيات الطيبة.
- **Bye for now.** إلى اللقاء.

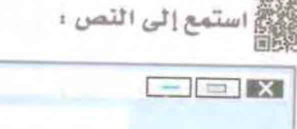
٧. ثم تكتب إسمك.

Study the following

1. I play on a team once a week.
   - العب في الفريق مرة في الأسبوع.
2. My favorite unusual animal from Egypt is the dugong.
   - الأطوم حيواني المفضل وغير المألوف في مصر.
3. It's got a lovely friendly face and it's very cute.
   - لديه وجه أليف و محبوب وهو حيوان رائع جدًا.
4. Its nickname is the sea cow.
   - اسم الشهرة هو بقرة البحر.
5. It spends many hours eating grass from the sea bed every day.
   - يقضي ساعات طويلة يأكل العشب من قاع البحر كل يوم.

1 Read Amir's email. What's his favorite unusual animal?

اقرأ إيميل أمير. ما الحيوان غير المألوف لديه؟



استمع إلى النص:

From: Amir
To: Tamer
Subject: Unusual animals

New Message

Dear Tamer,

Thanks for your email. How are things? It was really interesting to hear about the sports you like. I love basketball, and I play on a team once a week.
This week we're talking a lot about unusual animals at school. We looked at animals from around the world and some from Egypt. My favorite unusual animal from Egypt is the dugong - can you see the photo? I think it's got a lovely friendly face and it's very cute! Its nickname is the sea cow and it spends many hours eating grass from the sea bed every day.
What about you? What's your favorite unusual animal? Write back and let me know.
Hope to hear from you soon!
Amir



dugong



Send

2 Read again and answer True (T) or False (F):

اقرأ النص السابق مرة أخرى وأجب بـ (False) أو (True):

1. Tamer called Amir and they talked about sports.
2. Amir doesn't like sports.
3. Amir wants to talk about wildlife.
4. He sends a photo to Tamer.
5. Amir says that dugongs are also called sea cows.
6. He wants Tamer to write back.

3 Complete the email phrases:

أكمل عبارات الإيميل:

things - note - best - soon

1. See you .... !
2. How are .... ?
3. Just a quick ....
4. All the ....

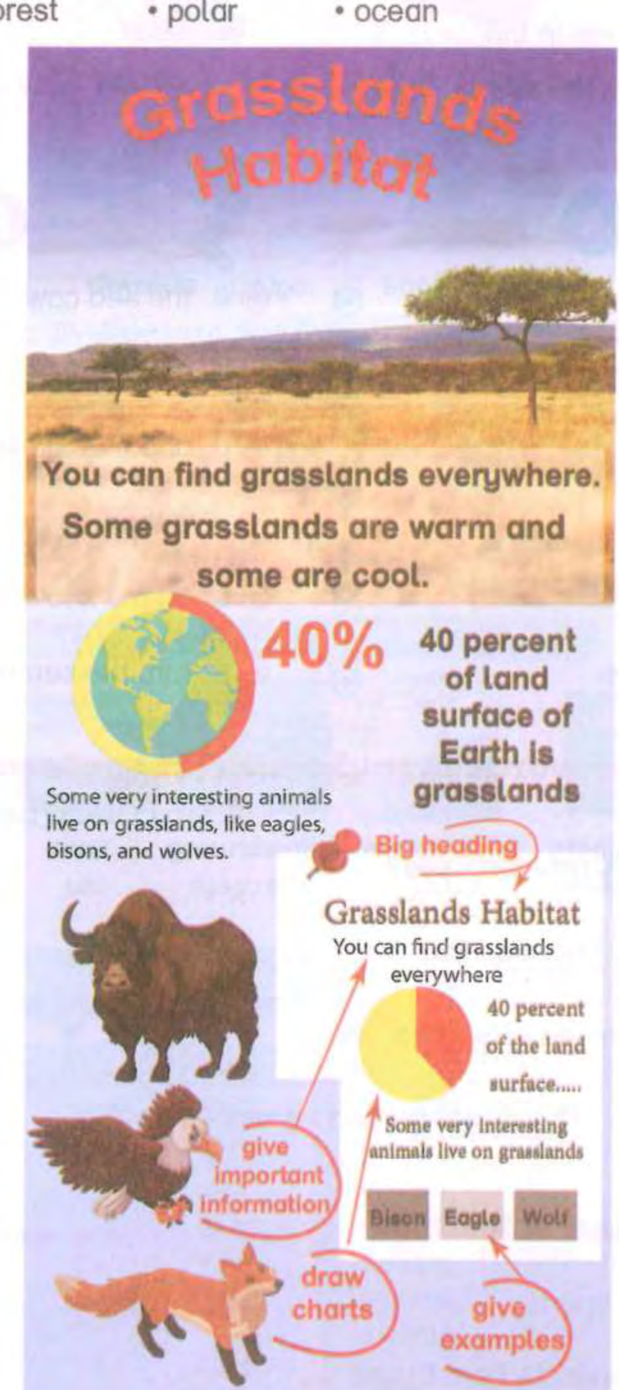
4 Work in pairs. Discuss and decide:

اعملوا فى ثنائيات. تناقشوا وقرروا:

You are going to make an infographic about an animal habitat. First, look at the example of an infographic. Then choose a habitat for your infographic. Here are some ideas:

- ستقوم بعمل مخطط معلومات بيانى. انظر للمثال القادم اولاً لمخطط المعلومات. ثم اختر بيئة لمخططك اليك بعض الافكار.

• desert • forest • polar • ocean



Activities



1 Listen and complete: استمع واكمل:

استمع إلى النص آخر الكتاب

1. Salma is watching a programme about .... animals.
2. Salma's favorite unusual animal is the ....
3. The dugong lives in the ....
4. Its nickname is the sea ....

2 Read and match (A) with (B): اقرأ وصل:

A	B
1 We're talking	a. the sea cows.
2 I play on	b. friendly face.
3 Dugongs are called	c. about unusual animals.
4 It's got a lovely	d. a team once a week.
5 Write back and	e. let me know.
	f. from the sea bed.

3 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

اعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

1. you - photo - Can - the - see?
----
2. email - your - Thanks - for.
----
3. nickname - the sea - Its - cow - is.
----
4. eats - the sea - The dugong - bed - grass - from.
----

4 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

1. does amir like sports. ---------------------------------
2. we looked at animals from Egypt ---------------------------

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك فى التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة.



Review

Animals الحيوانات


kangaroo حيوان الكُنغر


panda الباندا


bat خفاش


lion أسد

penguin بطريق


dolphin دولفين


snail حلزون


parrot ببغاء

Jobs in Ancient Egypt وظائف في مصر القديمة


soldier جندي


pharaoh فرعون


scribe كاتب


artisan نحات / رسام


farmer فلاح

The water cycle دورة الماء

clouds سحب

the sun الشمس


river نهر


groundwater مياه جوفية

evaporation التبخر

precipitation الهطول

stream جدول مائي

Other words كلمات أخرى



use a computer	يستخدم كمبيوتر
play chess	يلعب الشطرنج
wide	واسع - عريض
famous	مشهور
shelter	مأوى
rest	يستريح
comfortable	مريح
save	ينقذ
dugong	الأطوم

busy	مشغول
German	اللغة الألمانية
shade	ظل
traders	تجار
meeting point	مكان للتجمع
breeze	نسيم (رياح خفيف)
useless	بلا فائدة
ungrateful	ناكر الجميل
sea cow	بقرة البحر



Pronunciation

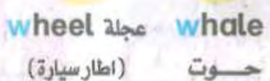
W w **V v**

- لاحظ نطق حرفي (Vv) / (Ww) من الأصوات التي تهتز فيها الأحبال الصوتية (voiced sound) حيث تضع يديك على الحنجرة وتشعر باهتزاز عند نطقهم.

/Ww/








winter الشتاء — wheel عجلة (اطارسيارة) — whale حوت — watermelon بطيخة

/Vv/




vet طبيب بيطري — violin آلة الكمان — volcano بركان — vase زهرية

Language Focus ملاحظات لغوية

1 للتعبير عن استطاعة فعل شيء في الحاضر نستخدم:

فاعل + can + يستطيع أن + فعل في المصدر

- Birds **can** fly.

في النفي نستخدم:

فاعل + can't + لا يستطيع أن + فعل في المصدر

- Pandas **can't** drive a car.

في السؤال نستخدم: Can + فاعل + inf فعل في المصدر ?

- **Can** you play tennis?

لاحظ لا نضع (to) بعد can / can't

2 للتعبير عن استطاعة فعل شيء في الماضي نستخدم:

في الاثبات: فاعل + could + inf فعل في المصدر.

- I **could** run fast last year.

في النفي: فاعل + couldn't + inf فعل في المصدر.

- I **couldn't** take the bus so I had to walk.

في السؤال: Could + فاعل + inf فعل في المصدر?

- **Could** you play the piano last year?

لاحظ لا نضع (to) بعد could / couldn't

When عندما + جملة في زمن الماضي البسيط + فاعل + could استطاع / couldn't لم يستطع + فعل في المصدر

- When I **was** five, I **could** speak English.
- When she **was** a baby, she **couldn't** walk.

Writing Skills مهارات الكتابة

Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words

Answers to Paragraphs

Lesson 2

Things you could do when you were little

1 When I was little, I could do many things, but there were things I couldn't do. I could ride a bike at five. I couldn't walk when I was two. My mother helped me to do a lot of things.



Lesson 3

Jobs in Ancient Egypt

2 There were many jobs in Ancient Egyptian society. People played important roles. For example, farmers grew many crops. Artisans made good things for people to use like furniture, chariots and clothes. Soldiers kept Egypt safe and guarded the kingdom.



Activity 3 - Unit 9

The bats

3 Bats fly at night. They are all hiding. We can't see them in the dark. They sleep upside down on trees. They are black. I don't like them. But my teacher wants me to do a project about them.



A- Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer: استمع وأختر:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب

1. I like .... (animals - birds - insects)
2. I say some words for it to .... (sing - think - repeat)

B- Language Functions

2 Read and complete the dialog: اقرأ وأكمل:

animals - go - park

A : Where did you ---------------------------- last weekend?

B : I went to the new wildlife ---------------------------- .

A : What did you see?

B : I saw some unusual ---------------------------- .

C- Reading Comprehension

3 Read and choose the correct answer: اقرأ واختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

This week we're talking about unusual animals at school. My favorite unusual animal from Egypt is the dugong. It's got lovely friendly face and it's very cute. Its nickname is the sea cow and it spends many hours eating grass from the sea bed every day.

Choose the correct answer:

1. This week we're talking about .... animals. (usual - unusual - cute)
2. We're talking about unusual animals at .... (house - park - school)
3. My favorite unusual animal from Egypt is the .... (elephant - dugong - lion)
4. Its nickname is the sea .... (fish - whale - cow)
5. It spends many hours eating .... from the sea bed every day. (meat - rice - grass)

D- Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. I .... speak French when I lived in France.
   a can b can't c could
2. Rain falls from clouds in the ....
   a moon b sky c earth
3. My favorite .... is Miss Fatma. She is kind in the classroom.
   a vet b doctor c teacher
4. Sorry, I .... help you with your homework. I'm busy.
   a can b can't c could
5. It's important to .... lots of trees.
   a sleep b meet c plant

E- The Reader

5 Choose the correct answer : اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. Grandma is so excited to see her ....
   a son b grandparents c grandchildren
2. They are wearing hats, scarves, and ....
   a boots b shirts c sunglasses

F- Writing

6 Write a short paragraph of Four (4) sentences about:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من ٤ جمل عن:

Farmers in Ancient Egypt

----

on Unit 9 Activity



1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False): استمع واكتب (صح) أو (خطأ):



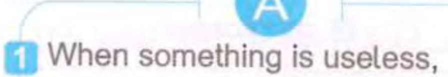
		True	False
1	Penguins lives in the river.		
2	Penguins are cute and friendly.		
3	A penguin swims in a group of family.		
4	The English teacher was happy about the project.		

2 Listen and complete: استمع وأكمل:

نص الاستماع اخر الكتاب

1. There were many .... in the Ancient Egyptian society.
2. Tarek would like to be a ....
3. Soldiers guarded the ....
4. Soldiers kept Ancient Egyptians ....

3 Read and match (A) with (B): اقرأ وصل:



A	B
1 When something is useless,	a. many green branches.
2 I'm black and white.	b. their mom's pouch.
3 Could you speak English	c. ungrateful to the tree.
4 Little kangaroos sit inside	d. when you were five?
5 The tree has	e. I'm a penguin.
	f. we can't use it.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

Water is the secret of life on planet Earth. Water is two-thirds of the planet, but land is only a third of the planet. It comes from lakes, oceans, rivers and rains. It's a renewable resource. We use water when we wake up in the morning until we sleep at night. We should drink much water every day to keep healthy.

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك ان يتعامل مع هذه الأسئلة

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. We should drink water to keep ....
   a unhealthy b tired c bad d healthy
2. The land is .... of the planet.
   a a third b two-thirds c a quarter d a half

B. Answer the following questions:

3. How much water is on planet Earth?

- -

4. Where does water come from?

- -

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

اعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

1. feed - my - I've - rabbit - got - to.

- -

2. plant - Is - trees - it - important - to?

- -

3. swim - Could - year - Hany - last?

- -

4. jump - can - Kangaroos - high - very.

- -

6 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للاتى:

1. could you read when you were a child - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - -
2. we can't see or smell the water vapor - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - -

7 Write a paragraph of Forty (40) words using the following guiding elements: اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٤٠) كلمة عن:

مجاب اخر الوحدة

The bats

1- When do bats fly?
2- How do bats sleep?

- -

- -

- -

- -

Review 3

Objectives of Review 3 أهداف المراجعة

Lesson 1: Listening and speaking

- To revise the vocabulary and language from Units 7 - 9.

- يراجع الطالب المفردات والقواعد اللغوية الموجودة بالوحدات من ٧ إلى ٩.

Lesson 2: Phonics and Assessment

- To revise the key letter sounds from Units 7 - 9.

- يراجع الطالب الصوتيات من الوحدات ٧ إلى ٩.

- To evaluate progress in Units 7 - 9.

- يتم تقييم مدى نجاح الطالب فى استيعاب الوحدات من ٧ الى ٩.

- To learn about the society.

- يتعلم الطالب عن المجتمع.

- To read a non-fiction text and answer questions.

- يقرأ الطالب نص به معلومات حقيقية ويجيب عن الاسئلة.

- To identify keywords from the story.

- يتعرف الطالب على الكلمات الاساسية فى القصة.



Lesson 1 ★ Units 7, 8 & 9

1 Listen and point: استمع وأشر:



Tapescript نص الاستماع — استمع إلى المفردات

1- clock	6- kangaroo	11- shower
2- cough	7- headache	12- panda
3- bat	8- balcony	14- oven
4- closet	9- lion	15- toothache
5- dolphin	10- shoulder	16- parrot

Start

1- clock	2- ______	3- ______	4- ______	5- ______
10- ______	9- ______	8- ______	7- ______	6- ______
11- ______	12- ______	13- ______	14- ______	15- ______

Finish

Review 3

2 **Look and write:** أنظر وأكتب (كالمثال):

- اكتب جمل عن الصور السابقة في Ex.1:

3 **Play and say:** العب وقل:

What's number 12?





It's a panda. What's number 15?

4 **Complete the sentences using the words in the box:**

أكمل الجمل مستخدماً الكلمات فى القائمة:

unhappy - unsafe - uncomfortable - unfriendly

1. I'm glad Mom and Dad didn't buy that couch - it was really uncomfortable.
2. She's very ________ because she lost her homework.
3. We all thought the new girl was ________, but actually she just didn't talk much.
4. That electrical wire looks very ________ - don't touch it!

5 **Complete the text about Injy's day in Alexandria with the verbs in the regular and irregular past simple form:**

أكمل الجمل عن يوم إنجى فى الأسكندرية باستخدام الأفعال المنتظمة وغير المنتظمة فى زمن الماضى البسيط:



I __had__ **(have)** a lovely day yesterday.
I ❷ ________ **(travel)** to Alexandria with my mom to see my aunt. We ❸ ________ **(go)** by train. I love trains!
When we ❹ ________ **(arrive)**, we ❺ ________ **(rush)** straight to my aunt's house. She ❻ ________ **(give)** us a delicious lunch. After lunch, my aunt ❼ ________ **(take)** us to the Corniche. The sea ❽ ________ **(be)** really beautiful.

6 **Complete the sentences about the rest of Injy's day in Exercise 5. Check (✓) the sentences with irregular verbs:**

أكمل الجمل عن باقى يوم إنجى فى التمرين ٥. ضع علامة صح أمام الجمل التى تحتوى على أفعال غير منتظمة:

1- We __drank__ **(drink)** juice at a café in the square. (✓)
2- Then we ________ **(drive)** to the market and ________ (buy) a present for a friend. ( )
3- We ________ **(have)** a great time. ( )
4- I nearly ________ **(miss)** the train home! ( )
5- I ________ **(sleep)** all the way back home. ( )

Lesson 2 ★ Units 7, 8 & 9

1 **Label the photos with the words in the box:**

ضع الكلمة المناسبة من القائمة تحت الصورة الخاصة بها:

backache - cough - earache - headache - sore throat - toothache

❶ 
headache

❷ 
____

❸ 
____

❹ 
____

❺ 
____

❻ 
____

2 **Put the dialog in the correct order. Listen, check, and repeat. Then act it out in pairs:**

رتب المحادثة. استمع وتأكد وكرر ثم قم بالادوار فى ثنائيات:

نص الاستماع اخر الكتاب

Nurse : Come in, Kareem. What's the matter? (1)
Kareem: Thank you, nurse. ( )
Nurse : Oh dear. Did you hit your ear with a ball? ( )
Kareem: I have an earache. ( )
Nurse : Let me see. Yes, it is red inside. I think you should go home. I'll telephone your mom. ( )
Kareem: No, I had an earache when I woke up this morning. ( )

3 Listen then write the words you hear. Then match the words and pictures:

استمع ثم اكتب الكلمات التى تسمعها. ثم صل الكلمات بالصور:








1- panda (1)
2- p ....
3- d ....
4- r ....
5- s ....
6- w ....

4 Complete the sentences with could or couldn't:

أكمل الجمل باستخدام could أو couldn't :

1. I couldn't speak when I was one month old.
2. I ________ ride a bike when I was a baby.
3. Waleed ________ read when he was 6. He loves reading!
4. Amira ________ write until she went to school.
5. Tamer's brother ________ drive at 20 - he passed his driving test at 18.
6. I ________ play a guitar at seven. My dad taught me.

5 Complete the crossword with the -er words:

أكمل الكلمات المتقاطعة باستخدام كلمات تنتهى بـ er:

Down

1. Someone who helps you in the classroom.
2. Someone who plays a famous sport with a ball.
3. Someone who goes up mountains using a rope.

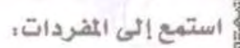
Across

4. Someone who travels to a lot of places.
5. Someone who grows food for us.
6. Someone who reads a lot.



★ Non-Fiction
Are there endangered animals in Egypt?





استمع إلى المفردات:


Egyptian tortoise
السلحفاة المصرية


Dorcas gazelle
غزال دوركاس (غزال الأريل)

extinct	منقرض
habitat	موطن (مسكن طبيعى)
endangered	مهدد بالانقراض
poaching	الصيد الجائر
herbivores	نباتى (آكل للأعشاب)



Other words كلمات أخرى

no longer	لم يعد
several	عديد
reason	سبب
including	مشتملاً / بما في ذلك
loss	خسارة / فقدان
pollution	التلوث
responsibility	مسؤولية
actions	أفعال
species	فصيلة / فصائل
population	تعداد السكان
up to	يصل إلى
length	طول
weight	وزن
top speed	أقصى سرعة
km per hour	كيلو متر فى الساعة
diet	غذاء
Sahara	الصحراء الكبرى
meat	لحم
skin	جلد حى
farming	الزراعة
kilogram	كيلوجرام



Definitions تعريفات

extinct (adj) منقرض	if something is extinct, it no longer exists
habitat (n) موطن (مسكن طبيعي)	the place where an animal or plant lives

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
exist	يوجد	existed
live	يعيش	lived
protect	يحمي	protected
share	يشارك	shared
destroy	يدمر	destroyed
hunt	يصطاد	hunted

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
mean	يعني	meant
become	يصبح	became
hurt	يؤذي	hurt
keep	يحفظ	kept
sell	يبيع	sold

Study the following

1. Some animals are endangered.
بعض الحيوانات مهددة بالانقراض.
2. The Egyptian tortoise is one of the smallest tortoises in the world.
السلحفاة المصرية واحدة من أصغر السلاحف في العالم.
3. It lives in the desert areas of Egypt and Libya.
تعيش (السلحفاة المصرية) في المناطق الصحراوية في مصر وليبيا.
4. They are herbivores; they only eat leaves and plants.
هم نباتيون، يأكلون فقط أوراق النبات والنباتات.
5. People hunt the Dorcas gazelle for its meat and skin.
يصطاد الناس غزال دوركاس من أجل لحمه وجلده.

1 Work with a partner. Ask and answer: اعمل مع زميلك. إسأل وأجب:

- Is it important to protect wild animals? Why? / Why not?

2 Read and listen to the article about endangered animals:

إقرأ واستمع للمقال عن الحيوانات المهددة بالانقراض:

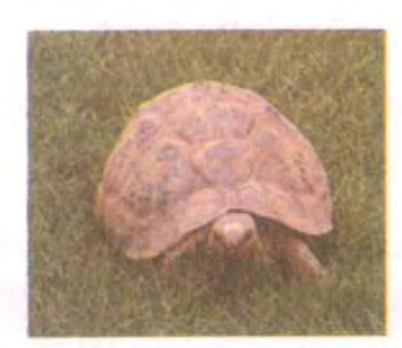
استمع إلى النص

Tapescript نص الاستماع

If an animal is endangered [1], it means that it could become extinct [2]. Animals can become endangered for several reasons[3] including loss[4] of habitat[5], pollution [6], and poaching[7]. It's our responsibility[8] to protect all wild animals because we share the Earth with them! Our actions[9] shouldn't hurt[10] wild animals or their habitats. In Egypt, around 70 species[11] of animals are endangered. Let's look at two of them:

Arabic Meaning

١- مهدد بالانقراض
٢- منقرض
٣- أسباب عديدة
٤- فقدان
٥- موطن
٦- التلوث
٧- الصيد الجائر
٨- مسؤولية
٩- أفعال
١٠- يؤذي
١١- فصائل
١٢- تعداد السكان
١٣- الطول
١٤- الوزن
١٥- أقصى سرعة
١٦- الغذاء


Egyptian tortoise


Dorcas gazelle

Facts (Egyptian tortoise)		Facts (Dorcas gazelle)	
Population[12]	: 7, 470	Population	: 1,000-2,000
Can live up to	: 50 years	Can live up to	: 15 years
Length [13]	: 14.4 cm	Length	: 90- 100 cm
Weight [14]	: 160- 350 g	Weight	: 15- 20 kg
Top speed [15]	: up to 8 kms per hour	Top speed	: up to 96 kms per hour
Diet[16]	: plants and leaves	Diet	: plants and leaves

The Egyptian tortoise[17] is one of the smallest tortoises in the world . It lives in the desert areas of Egypt and Libya. However, the Egyptian tortoise is now endangered. This is because its habitat has been destroyed[18], but also because people take them from the wild to keep as pets. Dorcas gazelles[19] live in the Sahara[20] and Negev deserts[21]. They are herbivores[22] - this means they only eat leaves and plants. Dorcas gazelles are nearly extinct for two main reasons: firstly, people hunt them for their meat and skin. Secondly, more and more people are using their habitat for farming[23] and building.

١٧- السلحفاة المصرية
١٨- يدمر
١٩- غزال دوركاس
٢٠- الصحراء الكبرى
٢١- صحراء النقب
٢٢- نباتى
٢٣- الزراعة

3 Read again. Write the information in the correct part of the diagram:
إقرأ مرة أخرى. أكتب المعلومات فى المكان الصحيح بالشكل:

- more than 5,000
- lives in the desert
- only eats plants and leaves
- can run nearly 100 kms per hour
- lives up to 15 years
- people keep them as pets

Egyptian tortoise | Dorcas gazelle

- lives in the desert

4 Complete the sentences with the words in the box: أكمل الجمل بالكلمات من القائمة:

extinct - habitat - kilograms - kilometers - meat - wild

1. People take tortoises from the .... and sell them as pets.
2. The Egyptian tortoise can travel at about eight .... per hour.
3. People hunt the Dorcas gazelle for its .... and skin.
4. The Dorcas gazelle weighs between 15 and 20 ....
5. Both the Egyptian tortoise and the Dorcas gazelle are nearly ....
6. People are destroying the .... of the Dorcas gazelle and the Egyptian tortoise.



Activity on Units (7,8 & 9)

A- Listening

1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False): استمع واكتب (صواب) أو (خطأ)

نص الاستماع اخر الكتاب

1. Dina lives in Cairo.
2. Her parents had to move to a new job.
3. The new apartment is smaller.
4. The kitchen is bigger.

2 Listen and complete: استمع وأكمل:

1. The two friends went to the .... yesterday.
2. Omar hurt his ....
3. His .... took him to see the doctor.
4. He had to stay at home for a ....

B- Reading

3 Read and match (A) with (B): اقرأ وصل:

A	B
1 Snails	a. you live?
2 I couldn't take the bus	b. eat her dinner.
3 Where do	c. eats her dinner.
4 What's	d. so I had to walk.
5 She didn't	e. the matter?
	f. can live in shells.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

My sister Dina is pupil in primary five. She likes helping **patients**. She wants to be a nurse when she grows up. On the summer holiday, she goes to the hospital near her house. The doctors and nurses like her. They teach her how to change bandages and give injections. She buys books about medicine, too.

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك ان يتعامل مع هذه الأسئلة

Review 3

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Dina wants to be a .... when she grows up.

   a vet b doctor c nurse d patient

2. The underlined word "**patients**" means .... people.

   a sick b healthy c helpful d useful

B. Answer the following questions:

3. What does Dina learn from doctors and nurses?

   ---

4. Where does Dina go on the summer holiday?

   ---

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

1. sore - a - I - throat - have. ---
2. new - the - Dina - apartment - likes. ---
3. important - food - eat - to - healthy - It's. ---
4. lions - very - Can - fast - run? ---

6 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

1. do you like vegetables ---
2. I didn t arrive on time ---

7 Write a paragraph of Forty (40) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من ٤٠ كلمة عن:

"Your favorite animal"

1. What's your favorite animal?
2. What color is the panda?

Theme 2

Being responsible

Unit 10

Let's visit Egypt

هيا نزور مصر







Objectives of the Unit أهداف الوحدة

1. Listen, read, research, and write about places in a town.
   - يستمع الطالب ويقرأ ويبحث ويكتب عن الأماكن الموجودة بالمدينة.
2. Practice using the imperative to tell someone to do or not to do to something.
   - يتدرب الطالب على استخدام صيغة الأمر لإخبار شخص ما بفعل شيء ما أو عدم فعله.
3. Practice using questions and short answers.
   - يتدرب الطالب على استخدام صيغة الأسئلة والإجابات القصيرة.
4. Read and say words with diphthongs.
   - يقرأ الطالب ويقول الكلمات التي تحتوي على ادغام.
5. Estimate with mental math.
   - يقوم الطالب بالتقدير باستخدام الرياضيات الذهنية.
6. Write a paragraph about my town.
   - يكتب الطالب فقرة إنشائية عن مدينته.
7. Make a poster about my perfect town.
   - يصنع الطالب ملصقًا عن مدينته المثالية.







Lesson 1 ★ We Love Alexandria!

Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات:



bank بنك

factory مصنع



monument نُصب تذكاري / أثر



library مكتبة



shopping mall مول تجاري



Places الأماكن



square ميدان



station محطة





museum متحف



market سوق



beach شاطئ



supermarket سوبر ماركت



hotel فندق



restaurant مطعم

mint tea	شاي بالنعناع
local cuisine	مأكولات / أطباق محلية
spend ages	يقضي الكثير من الوقت

originally	في الأصل
on vacation	في إجازة

Countries, Cities and towns

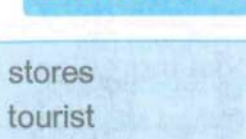


Countries	دول
Egypt	مصر
England	إنجلترا
Germany	ألمانيا

Cities & towns	مدن كبيرة وصغيرة
Alexandria	الإسكندرية
Fayoum	الفيوم
Cairo	القاهرة
Barcelona	برشلونة

جميع أسماء الدول والمدن تبدأ بحرف capital.

Other words كلمات أخرى



stores	متاجر / محلات
tourist	سائح
roof garden	حديقة فوق السطح
chatting	دردشة
relaxing	مريح
amazing	رائع
excellent	ممتاز
culture	حضارة / ثقافة
yet	حتى الآن
sweet	حلو المذاق
exciting	مثير / رائع

ingredients	مكونات الطعام
friendly	ودود
the Pyramids	الأهرامات
school trip	رحلة مدرسية
traditional food	طعام تقليدي
fresh	طازج
modern buildings	مباني حديثة
traditions	تقاليد
shopping	التسوق
swimming	السباحة
mix of	مزيج / خليط من

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
serve	يقدم طعام	served
remind	يُذكِّر	reminded
own	يملك	owned

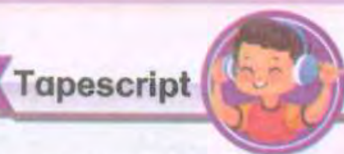
Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
think	يعتقد	thought
go	يذهب	went
find out	يكتشف	found out
see	يرى	saw

Study the following

1. Alexandria is a really exciting place to visit. الإسكندرية مكان مثير حقًا للزيارة.
2. There's a lot to see and do here! هناك الكثير لرؤيته والقيام به هنا!
3. I love just sitting in the roof garden of my hotel. أحب الجلوس في الحديقة التي على سطح الفندق.
4. I love drinking sweet Egyptian mint tea and chatting to other people. أحب شُرب الشاي المصري بالنعناع الحلو المذاق والدردشة مع الآخرين.
5. I've lived in Alexandria all my life. لقد عشت في الإسكندرية طوال حياتي.
6. You must visit my restaurant to try some of the local cuisine. يجب أن تزور مطعمي لتتذوّق بعض الطعام المحلي.
7. We serve traditional Egyptian food using lovely fresh local ingredients. نقدم الطعام المصري التقليدي باستخدام مكوّنات محلية طازجة لذيذة.
8. I prefer to buy my ingredients at the market. أفضل شراء مكونات طعامي من السوق.
9. We spend ages walking around them. نقضي الكثير من الوقت في التجول حولهم.
10. I'm Egyptian, originally from Cairo. أنا مصري، في الأصل من القاهرة.
11. My favorite place is the beach. المكان المفضل لدي هو الشاطئ.
12. I'm on vacation here from Barcelona. أنا في إجازة هنا قادماً من برشلونة.
13. I love the mix of modern and old buildings. أحب المزيج بين المباني الحديثة والقديمة.
14. I like to find out about the culture and traditions. أحب التعرف على الثقافة والتقاليد.
15. There's a really big station in my town. هناك بالفعل محطة كبيرة في بلدتي.

1 Listen and read: Who is from Alexandria? استمع واقرأ. من مدينته الإسكندرية؟



Tapescript نص الاستماع استمع إلى النص:

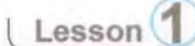


Why we love Alexandria!

Arabic Meaning
١- حتى الآن
٢- الحديقة فوق السطح
٣- شاي بالنعناع
٤- مريح

Alexandria is a really exciting place to visit. There's a lot to see and do here! It's a big city with lots of amazing restaurants, stores, markets, and museums. There's even a beach! We asked some people who live there and tourists what they think ...

Jens: I'm visiting Alexandria from Germany. I think it's really cool here. I think there are some good museums, but I haven't been to any **yet** (1). I love just sitting in the **roof garden** (2) of my hotel, drinking sweet Egyptian **mint tea** (3) and chatting to other people. It's very **relaxing** (4).





Hanan: I've lived in Alexandria all my life. I own a restaurant here so I have to say that you must visit my restaurant to try some of the **local cuisine** (5). We serve traditional Egyptian food using lovely fresh local ingredients. We have **excellent** (6) supermarkets, but I prefer to buy my **ingredients** (7) at the market in the old town.

Kira and Lena: We're from a small town in England. The **stores** (8) aren't very good there. That's what we love most about Alexandria—the shopping malls! We **spend ages** (9) walking around them. We like the people. They are so **friendly** (10)!

Karim: I'm Egyptian, **originally** (11) from Cairo. I moved to Alexandria last year and I love it here. I work in a bank. My favorite place is the beach—there isn't one in Cairo! It can get very hot here in **summer** (12), so it's great to go there and swim.

Paulo: I'm on **vacation** (13) here from **Barcelona** (14). I like Alexandria because it reminds me of home—a big, modern city near the sea. I love the mix of modern and old **buildings** (15). Also, I like to find out about the **culture** (16) and **traditions** (17). The library is amazing!

٥- أكلات محلية
٦- ممتاز
٧- مكونات الطعام
٨- متاجر
٩- يقضي وقت كثير
١٠- ودود
١١- أصلاً/ في الاصل
١٢- الصيف
١٣- عطلة
١٤- برشلونة
١٥- مباني
١٦- ثقافة/ حضارة
١٧- تقاليد

2 Listen again. Circle the correct word:

استمع مرة أخرى وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Jens likes drinking tea in the **museum** / **(hotel)**.
2. Hanan buys her ingredients from the **supermarket** / **market**.
3. Kira and Lena like **shopping** / **swimming** in Alexandria.
4. Karim lives in **Cairo** / **Alexandria**.
5. Paulo likes Alexandria because it is like **Cairo** / **Barcelona**.

3 Listen and repeat. Then look and write: استمع وردد. ثم انظر واكتب:

station - factory - library - monument - bank - square - shopping mall

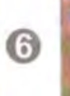
1. 

....

2. 
....

3.  
....

4. 
....

5.  
....

6. 
....

7. 
....

4 Listen and match the places and people: استمع وصل الأماكن بالأشخاص:



library - monument - factory - station

1 Sarah	2 Ahmed	3 Dina	4 Youssef
....	....	....	....







5 Look at the places in Exercise 3. Which of the places are in your town? Talk to a partner:

انظر إلى الصور فى تمرين ٣ أى من الاماكن موجودة فى مدينتك؟ تكلم مع زميلك:

There's a really big station on my town.

That's right. There's also a library.



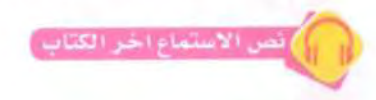
Did you know? هل تعلم؟

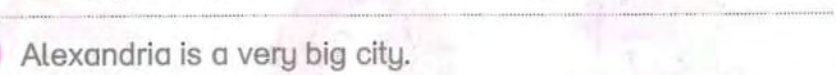
Fayoum is the oldest town in Egypt. Archaeologists think it is more than 7,000 years old.

تعد الفيوم أقدم مدينة في مصر. يعتقد علماء الآثار أن عمرها أكثر من ٧٠٠٠ عام.

Activities

1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False): استمع واكتب (صواب) أو (خطأ):





1. Every year, I go to Alexandria with my friends. ☐ ☐
2. Alexandria is a very big city. ☐ ☐
3. We always stay in a house near the beach. ☐ ☐
4. We always have lunch at a big restaurant. ☐ ☐

2 Read and match (A) with (B): اقرأ وصل:

A	B
1 Fayoum is the	a. and traveled by train.
2 I love sitting in the roof	b. so, I go to Alexandria every year.
3 Sara went to the station	c. garden of my hotel.
4 I own a restaurant and	d. I serve traditional Egyptian food.
5 My favorite place is a beach	e. oldest town in Egypt.
	f. we will go to the shopping mall.

3 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

1. a really - place - exciting - Alexandria - to visit - is.

- -

2. is - favorite - the - My - place - beach.

- -

3. is - Who - Alexandria - from?

- -

4. in - from - town - We're - England - a small.

- -

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك فى التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة.

5. the supermarket - Hanan - from - buys - the - ingredients.

---

6. Youssef - like - and Hala - in - swimming - Alexandria.

---

7. to - Ramy - wants - books - some - borrow.

---

4 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. where do you come from

---

2. i have lived in alexandria all my life.

---

5 Write a paragraph of Forty (40) words using the following guiding elements: اكتب فقرة إنشائية من ٤٠ كلمة عن:

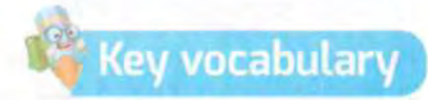
A visit to Alexandria

exciting place to visit - favorite place is the beach





Lesson 2 ★ Let's Find Out!



Key vocabulary



استمع إلى المفردات:

evidence	دليل / أدلة
monuments	آثار
paintings	نقوش / رسوم منقوشة
artifacts	تُحف / مصنوعات يدوية أثرية
hieroglyphics	اللغة الهيروغليفية
tombs	مقابر



Other words كلمات أخرى

Ancient Egypt	مصر القديمة
buildings	مباني
clearly	بوضوح
daily life	الحياة اليومية
facts	حقائق
feasts	أعياد
important people	شخصيات هامة
information	معلومات
objects	أشياء / ممتلكات
papyrus	ورق البردي
signs	علامات / إشارات
special events / occasions	أحداث / مناسبات خاصة
scenes	مشاهد
structures	مباني
true	حقيقي
vase	زهرية / فازة
walls	جدران
water carriers	سقايات(اواني حفظ المياه)
writing symbols	رموز الكتابة

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
exist	يوجد	existed
celebrate	يحتفل	celebrated
bury	يدفن	buried

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
knew	يعرف	knew
learn	يتعلم	learnt / learned
build	يبني	built
make	يصنع	made
teach	يعلم	taught



Definitions تعريفات

artifact	تُحف	objects like vases and pots which were made in the past
evidence	دليل / آدلة	facts that show something is true
hieroglyphics	اللغة الهيروغليفية	a kind of writing using pictures and symbols
monument	آثار	a building or statue
painting	رسمة ملونه	a picture
tomb	مقبرة	people were buried here when they died



Study the following

1. How do we know so much about life in Ancient Egypt?
كيف نعرف الكثير عن الحياة في مصر القديمة؟
2. Have you seen any of these things?
هل رأيت أيًا من هذه الأشياء؟
3. What are hieroglyphics?
ما هي اللغة الهيروغليفية؟
4. They are Ancient Egyptian writing symbols and pictures.
هي عبارة عن رموز وصور الكتابة المصرية القديمة.
5. Monuments teach us about buildings in Ancient Egypt.
تعلمنا الآثار عن المباني في مصر القديمة.
6. Monuments were built to celebrate important people.
تم بناء النصب التذكارية (الآثار) للاحتفال بالأشخاص المهمين.
7. Artifacts can give us information about how people lived.
يمكن أن تعطينا المصنوعات اليدوية (الأثرية) معلومات حول كيفية معيشة الناس.
8. Paintings often show scenes of daily life or special occasions.
غالبًا ما تُظهر الرسومات المنقوشة مشاهد من الحياة اليومية أو المناسبات الخاصة.
9. Pharaohs were buried in tombs.
تم دفن الفراعنة في مقابر.

1 Look, listen and read. Have you seen any of these things? انظر واستمع واقرأ:

Tapescript نص الاستماع — استمع إلى النص:



How do we know so much about life in Ancient Egypt?

There is lots of **evidence** (1) that tells us about life in **Ancient Egypt** (2). Evidence is **facts** (3) or **signs** (4) that show **clearly** (5) that something **exists** (6) or is true.

We can learn about buildings from ancient **monuments** (7). These are structures that were built to celebrate **important people** (8).



Artifacts (9) are things from daily life like **vases** (10) and **water carriers** (11) that tell us how people lived.



Paintings (12) are on walls or on papyrus. They show **scenes** (13) of daily life, such as farmers working in the **fields** (14), or **special occasions** (15), such as **feasts** (16) and **special events** (17).



Hieroglyphics (18) are Ancient Egyptian writing **symbols** (19) and pictures. From hieroglyphics we can get evidence about life in Ancient Egypt.



Pharaohs (20) and other important people were buried in beautiful **tombs** (21). These also had other things people thought they might need and information about their life.



Arabic Meaning

١- دليل
٢- مصر القديمة
٣- حقائق
٤- علامات
٥- بشكل واضح
٦- موجود
٧- آثار
٨- شخصيات هامة
٩- تُحف
١٠- زهريات
١١- سقايات
١٢- رسوم منقوشة
١٣- مشاهد
١٤- حقول
١٥- مناسبات خاصة
١٦- أعياد
١٧- أحداث خاصة
١٨- الهيروغليفية
١٩- رموز
٢٠- الفراعنة
٢١- المقابر

2 Look at the words and match them to their meanings:

انظر إلى الكلمات وصلها مع معانيها :

A	B
1 evidence	a. a building or statue
2 monument	b. facts that show something is true
3 painting	c. a kind of writing using pictures and symbols
4 artifact	d. people were buried here when they died
5 tomb	e. objects like vases and pots which were made in the past
6 hieroglyphics	f. a picture

3 Complete the sentences:

اكمل الجمل :

1. Monuments teach us about .... in Ancient Egypt.
2. Monuments were built to .... important people.
3. Artifacts can give us information about ....
4. Paintings often show .... or ....
5. .... were buried in tombs.
6. Hieroglyphics are .... and ....

4 Ask and answer questions about the text in Exercise 1:

اسأل وأجب عن أسئلة حول النص في التمرين ١ :



What are hieroglyphics?

They are Ancient Egyptian writing symbols and pictures.



Activities

1 Listen and complete:

استمع واكمل:

نص الاستماع اخر الكتاب

1. Hieroglyphics are Ancient Egyptian writing ....
2. Monuments teach us about .... in Ancient Egypt.
3. Monuments were built to .... important people.
4. Pharaohs were buried in ....

2 Read and match (A) with (B):

اقرأ وصل:

A	B
1 Evidence	a. to celebrate important people.
2 Paintings show	b. vases and pots.
3 Artifacts are like	c. writing symbols and pictures.
4 Monuments were built	d. scenes of daily life.
5 Hieroglyphics are Egyptian	e. is a building or statue.
	f. facts that show something is true

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

The people in Ancient Egypt were skillful. <u>They</u> made many artifacts, like vases and water carriers. They drew paintings on the walls of temples or on papyrus. They built beautiful tombs for pharaohs and other important people. They built monuments to celebrate important people. They used hieroglyphics, which is a kind of writing using pictures and symbols.

A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The people in Ancient Egypt were ....
   a bad b beautiful c skillful d true
2. They made ...., like vases and water carriers.
   a writing b monuments c tombs d artifacts

B- Answer the following questions:

3. Why did they build monuments? -
4. What does the underlined pronoun "**They**" refer to? - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - -

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك في التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة

4 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

1. any - of - you - Have - seen - these things?

----

2. beautiful - in - buried - Pharaohs - were - tombs.

----

3. in - about life - we - How - Ancient Egypt - do - know?

----

4. celebrate - to - These structures - were - important people - built.

----

5. from - are - daily - things - Artifacts - life.

----

5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. what are hieroglyphics

----

2. monuments teach us about buildings in Ancient Egypt

Lesson 3 ★ Don't Run In The Library!



استمع إلى المفردات:



environment	البيئة
trash	قمامة
flower	زهرة
trash can	صندوق قمامة

Other words كلمات أخرى

Alexandria Library	مكتبة الإسكندرية
moment	لحظة
everybody	الجميع
quietly	بهدوء
upstairs	الطابق العلوي
elevator	مصعد
button	زر
loudly	بصوت عالي
shelf	رف
jacket	جاكت
swimming shorts	شورت السباحة
voice	صوت بشري
librarian	أمين المكتبة
tomorrow	غداً
unkind	غير لطيف
lesson	حصة / درس
password	كلمة السر
clean	نظيف



Instructions: تعليمات

Wait a moment.	انتظر لحظة.
Don't run.	لا تجري.
Walk quietly.	امشي بهدوء.
Go into the elevator.	اذهب إلى المصعد.
Stand back.	ارجع للخلف.
Push the number one button.	اضغط على الزر رقم واحد.
Wear your jacket, please.	ارتدي جاكيتك من فضلك.
Don't ride it in the house, please.	لا تركبها في المنزل من فضلك.
Don't forget to bring your swimming shorts.	لا تنسى إحضار شورت السباحة الخاص بك.
Lower your voice, please.	اخفض صوتك من فضلك.
Keep the environment clean.	حافظ على نظافة البيئة.
Don't jump up and down.	لا تقفز لأعلى ولأسفل.

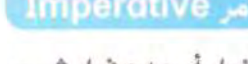
Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة			Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة		
Present مضارع		Past ماض	Present مضارع		Past ماض
wait	ينتظر	waited	stand	يقف	stood
close	يغلق	closed	choose	يختار	chose
push	يضغط / يدفع	pushed	bring	يحضر	brought
jump	يقفز	jumped	lose	يفقد	lost
return	يعود	returned	spend	يقضي	spent
listen	يستمع	listened	ride	يركب	rode
hurry	يسرع	hurried	forget	ينسى	forgot
pick	يلتقط	picked	wear	يرتدي	wore

Study the following

1. This is The Alexandria Library. — هذه مكتبة الإسكندرية.
2. Can we go inside? — هل يمكننا الدخول؟
3. Yes, OK. Let's go in. I'm going first! — نعم حسنًا. دعنا ندخل. سأدخل أولاً!
4. This is a very important place. — هذا مكان هام جدًا.
5. Can we go upstairs to the Children's Library? — هل يمكننا الصعود إلى مكتبة الطفل؟
6. The doors are closing. — الأبواب تغلق.
7. Is this new bike for me? — هل هذه الدراجة الجديدة لي؟
8. What book are you reading? — ما الكتاب الذي تقرأه؟
9. The librarian will ask us to be quiet. — سيطلب منك أمين المكتبة أن تبقى هادئاً.
10. I can't wait for tomorrow's trip to the beach! — لا أستطيع انتظار رحلة الغد إلى الشاطئ!
11. We'll have a great time! — سوف نحظى بوقت رائع!
12. Do not eat in the library. — لا تأكل فى المكتبة.
13. Bring your book back in two weeks. — أعد كتابك فى خلال أسبوعين.
14. Drink your water outside. — اشرب مياهك فى الخارج.
15. Don't use your mobile phone here. — لا تستخدم هاتفك المحمول هنا.
16. Do not lose your book. — لا تضيع كتابك.
17. Make sure you enjoy the books! — تأكد أنك تستمتع بالكتب.

Grammar قواعد لغوية



Imperative الأمر

◉ نستخدم صيغة الأمر لإعطاء تعليمات بفعل أو عدم فعل شيء.

- أولاً الأمر المثبت.

Inf. مصدر الفعل + باقى الجملة.

- Stand up! Open the door.

◉ يمكن أن يأتى قبل الفعل كلمات تدل على الطلب المهذب أو اسم شخص:

- Please, pick up that trash.
- Ali, close the window.

- ثانيًا الأمر المنفى.

Don't / Never + inf. مصدر الفعل + باقى الجملة.

- Don't eat in the library, please.
- Never waste your time.

◉ لاحظ لا تبدأ الجملة الأمرية بفاعل subject ولكن تبدأ بالفعل فى المصدر.

◉ لا يأتى بعد فعل الامر حرف جر (to)

1 Listen, and read. Where are the children going? استمع واقرأ:



Tapescript نص الاستماع — استمع إلى النص:

Teacher : OK, children. We're here now. This is The Alexandria Library.
Reem : Wow! It's amazing (1). Can we go inside?
Teacher : Wait a moment (2). Is everybody (3) here? Yes, OK. Let's go in.
Ali : I'm going first!
Teacher : Don't run, Ali. Walk quietly (4). This is a very important (5) place.
Ali : I'm sorry.
Noha : Can we go upstairs (6) to the Children's Library?
Teacher : Yes. Go into the elevator (7). Good. Stand back. The doors are closing. Don't jump up and down, Ali! Push the number one button (8), Tarek. Great, thank you. We're going up!

Arabic Meaning

١- رائع / مدهش
٢- لحظة
٣- الجميع
٤- بهدوء
٥- هام
٦- الطابق العلوي
٧- مصعد
٨- زر

2 Reorder the words to make imperative sentences:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جمل أمرية :

1. book - Choose - a - good - to read.
   ----
2. talk - loudly, - Don't - please.
   ----
3. write - in - Don't - the book.
   ----
4. the book - Return - its place - to.
   ----

3 Read the library rules. Rewrite the rules with imperatives:

اقرأ قواعد المكتبة. أعد كتابة القواعد بالأوامر:

1. You should not eat in the library.
   Don't eat in the library!
2. You have to bring your book back in two weeks.
   ----
3. You need to drink your water outside.
   ----
4. You cannot use your mobile phone here.
   ----
5. You should not lose your book.
   ----
6. You should make sure you enjoy the books!
   ----

4 Choose the correct answer

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة :

1. (Eat / Don't eat) fruits and vegetables to stay healthy.
2. (Spend / Don't spend) your time doing unimportant things.
3. Please, (writing / write) your answer in short sentences.
4. Stop making noise and (listen / not listen) to me, please.
5. You're late. (Hurries / Hurry up) or you'll miss the train.

5 Complete the conversations with the sentences in the box.

أكمل المحادثات بالجمل الموجودة فى القائمة :

> Wear your jacket, please.
> Don't ride it in the house, please.
> Don't forget to bring your swimming shorts.
> Lower your voice, please.

Conversation 1

Rania : Wow, Mom, is this new bike for me?

Mom : Yes, but --.

Conversation 2

Basel : It's really cold outside.

Dad : You're right. --.

Conversation 3

Amal : Hi Nada! What book are you reading?

Nada : ------------------------, or the librarian will ask us to be quiet.

Conversation 4

Sherif : I can't wait for tomorrow's trip to the beach!

Hazem : ------------------------------------. We'll have a great time!

6 Read and complete from the list:

اقرأ واكمل من القائمة :

> do – or – have – not – be

1. Come and .... lunch with us.
2. Don't .... unkind to your friends.
3. Please, study the lesson again and .... the exercise.
4. Don't come late, ... you will miss the first lesson.
5. Do .... tell anyone your password.

7 Use imperatives to show what you should or shouldn't do inside a park, using words from the box:

استخدم الأوامر لإظهار ما يجب أو لا يجب عليك فعله داخل الحديقة ، باستخدام كلمات من القائمة :

> environment – park – flowers – help – trash can

1. Keep the environment clean.
2. --
3. --
4. --
5. --

Activities



1 Listen and complete: استمع وأكمل:

1. We should encourage our .... to visit the library.
2. The .... is not the place for running or loud noises.
3. The children should keep the library ....
4. They should put the books on the ....

2 Read and match (A) with (B): اقرأ وصل:




A	B
1 You look hungry.	a. Don't forget to bring your swimming shorts.
2 Don't tell anyone	b. inside the house.
3 Don't ride your new bike	c. Hurry up or you'll miss the train!
4 We are going to the beach.	d. your password.
5 You're late.	e. unkind to your friends.
	f. Come and have lunch with us.

3 Reorder the words to make correct sentences: أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

1. new - me - bike - Is - for - this? ____________________
2. book - shelf - on - Put - the - your. ____________________
3. go - Children's Library - Can - to - we - the? ____________________
4. a - good - Choose - read -book - to. ____________________
5. the library - eat - in - Don't. ____________________
6. is - important - place - This - a very. ____________________
7. time - have - will - a great - We. ____________________

4 Write a paragraph of Forty (40) words using the following guiding elements: اكتب فقرة إنشائية من ٤٠ كلمة عن:

Library rules

put the books on the shelf – walk quietly

____
____
____
____
____



Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك فى التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة.



Lesson 4 ★ Gabi Learns A Lesson

Key vocabulary



استمع إلى المفردات:

recognize	يتعرف على
lost	تائه
strange-looking	غريب المظهر
tell the truth	يقول الحقيقة
entertain	يرفه / يسلي
creature	مخلوق
foolish	أحمق
apologize	يعتذر

Other words كلمات أخرى

villager	قروي (أحد سكان القرية)
walk far	يمشي بعيداً
sacks of beans	أكياس الفاصوليا
road	طريق
ibis	طائر أبو منجل
land	الأرض
branches	أغصان / فروع
Anyway	على أي حال
snake	ثعبان
even	حتى
unkindly	بطريقة غير لطيفة
crowds	عدد كبير من الناس (حشود)
dark	مظلم
enormous	هائل / كبير جداً
jerboa	حيوان الجربوع
rudely	بوقاحة
sounds	أصوات
traders	التجار

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماض
apologize	يعتذر	apologized
decide	يقرر	decided
look at	ينظر الي	looked at
recognize	يتعرف على	recognized
turn	يلتفت	turned
walk far	يمشي بعيدا	walked far
watch	يشاهد	watched
pretend	يتظاهر	pretended

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماض
begin	يبدأ	began
fly	يطير	flew
hear	يسمع	heard
know	يعرف	knew
say	يقول	said
see	يري	saw
sell	يبيع	sold
understand	يفهم	understood

Study the following

1. **Which animal does Gabi meet first?** ما الحيوان الذي التقى به جابي أولاً؟
2. **I will take them to the market for you.** سوف آخذهم إلى السوق من أجلك.
3. **He turned left and then right.** استدار يسارًا ثم يمينًا.
4. **Are you lost?** هل أنت تائه؟
5. **The ibis could fly high above the land and tell him the way.** استطاع طائر أبو منجل أن يطير عالياً فوق الأرض ويخبره بالطريق.
6. **Gabi saw a snake, watching him from the branches of a tree.** رأى جابي ثعبانًا يراقبه من أغصان شجرة.
7. **He wasn't telling the truth.** لم يكن يقول الحقيقة.
8. **The snake went to the market every day to entertain the crowds.** ذهب الثعبان إلى السوق كل يوم للترفيه عن الحشود.
9. **Look at those enormous ears.** انظر إلى تلك الآذان الضخمة.
10. **Do you need any help?** هل تحتاج إلى أي مساعدة؟
11. **The jerboa could hear the sounds of the market traders.** استطاع الجربوع سماع أصوات تجار السوق.
12. **He knew he was foolish and he was sorry.** كان يعلم أنه أحمق وكان نادمًا.
13. **He decided to go to sleep, and to apologize and ask for their help the next day.** قرر أن ينام، وأن يعتذر ويطلب مساعدتهم في اليوم التالي.
14. **Was Gabi right to behave in this way?** هل كان جابي على حق في التصرف بهذه الطريقة؟

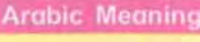
1 Listen, and read. Which animal does Gabi meet first? استمع واقرأ:



Tapescript نص الاستماع استمع إلى النص:

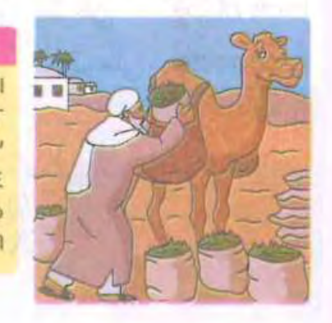
One day, a **villager**[1] wanted to sell his beans in the **market**[2], but he couldn't walk far. His camel, Gabi, said, "Give me the **sacks of beans**[3] - I will take them to the market for you."

Gabi walked **along**[4] the **road**[5]. He turned left and then right and then left again. Soon, Gabi didn't **recognize**[6] the road.



Arabic Meaning

١- قروي
٢- سوق
٣- أكياس الفاصوليا
٤- بمحاذاة
٥- طريق
٦- يتعرف على



"Are you **lost**[7]?" called an **ibis**[8]. Gabi had never seen such a **strange-looking**[9] bird.

"No, I'm not lost," **pretended**[10] Gabi. Gabi didn't know that the ibis could fly high above the land and tell him the way.

Gabi saw a snake, watching him from the **branches**[11] of a tree.

"You look lost," said the snake.

"No, I'm not," said Gabi - again he wasn't **telling the truth**[12].

"**Anyway**[13], **even**[14] if I was, you can't help - you haven't even got legs," he said **unkindly**[15]. Gabi didn't know that the snake went to the market every day to **entertain**[16] the **crowds**[17].

It began to get **dark**[18]. Gabi saw a little animal on the road in front of him.

"What a funny-looking **creature**[19]. Look at those **enormous**[20] ears," he thought to himself.

"Hello," said the **jerboa**[21]. "Do you need any help?"

"No, I don't!" replied Gabi **rudely**[22]. Gabi didn't know that the jerboa could hear the **sounds**[23] of the market **traders**[24].

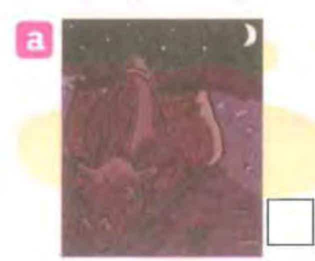
"OK, good night then," called the jerboa.

Soon, it was completely dark and Gabi understood he needed the animals' help. He knew he was **foolish**[25] and he was sorry. He decided to go to sleep, and to **apologize**[26] and ask for their help the next day.

٧- تائه
٨- أبو منجل
٩- غريب المظهر
١٠- تظاهر
١١- أغصان/فروع
١٢- يقول الحقيقة
١٣- على أي حال
١٤- حتى
١٥- بطريقة غير لطيفة
١٦- يسلي
١٧- الحشود
١٨- مظلم
١٩- مخلوق
٢٠- هائل/كبير جدًا
٢١- الجربوع
٢٢- بوقاحة
٢٣- أصوات
٢٤- التجار
٢٥- أحمق
٢٦- يعتذر

2 Read the story again. Put the pictures in the correct order:

أقرأ القصة مرة أخرى. رتب الصور:

a  ☐

b   1

c  ☐

d  ☐

e   ☐

3 Read the story again. Complete the sentences with the words in the box:

اقرأ القصة مرة أخرى. أكمل الجمل بالكلمات الموجودة فى القائمة:

fly – hear – help – snake

1. At the start, Gabi offered to .... the villager.
2. The ibis could help because he could .... over the land.
3. The .... could help because he went to the market every day.
4. The jerboa could help because he could .... very well.

4 Read and think. Talk to your partner:

اقرأ وفكر. تحدث مع زميلك:

1. Why do you think that Gabi did not tell the truth to any of the animals?
   - a He didn't want anyone to know that he was lost.
   - b He was angry.
   - c He was clever.
2. Was Gabi right to behave in this way?
   - a Yes, because he didn't need help.
   - b No, because he wasn't telling the truth.
   - c Yes, because the villager told him to go alone.
3. What lesson did Gabi learn at the end of the story?
   - a You shouldn't talk to strangers.
   - b Being rude is important.
   - c Asking for help is good.



◉ الإدغام diphthong في علم الصوتيات يعني دمج صوتين متحركين في مقطع صوتي واحد.

1 Listen and repeat:

استمع وكرر:

/əʊ/	go يذهب	show يبين/ عرض	below اسفل	wrote كتب	grow يزرع/ ينمو
/aɪ/	bite يعض	right صحيح/ يمين	bike دراجة	write يكتب	
/ɔɪ/	boy ولد	toy لعبة	coin عملة معدنية	enjoy يستمتع بـ	point يشير
/eɪ/	make يصنع	play يلعب	eight ثمانية	bake يخبز	ache ألم

◉ أحيانا يتم نطق نفس الصوت بطرق مختلفة مثلما في كلمتي **eight** & **ate**

2 Look at the table. Listen again and say:

انظر للجدول. استمع مرة أخرى وقل:

1. go	2. bite	3. boy	4. make
show	right	toy	play

3 Listen and say. Write the words in the correct places in the table:

استمع وقل. اكتب الكلمات فى المكان الصحيح فى الجدول:

1. ache	2. below	3. eight	4. bake	5. coin	6. time
7. grow	8. bike	9. enjoy	10. wrote	11. write	12. point

4 Choose the correct word from the table above:

اختر الكلمة الصحيحة من الجدول أعلاه:

grow - eight - ache - make

1. I have a bad tooth ....
2. Look! There are .... trees in the garden.
3. Let's .... a cake for my birthday!
4. Does the farmer .... vegetables?



CLIL: MATH

◉ الإجابة التقديرية أو التقريبية "estimated answer" ليست الإجابة الفعلية وإنما تعد تخميناً جيداً. على سبيل المثال، إذا قمنا بإضافة العدد ١٧ إلى العدد ١٢ فأنت تعلم أن الإجابة هي "قريبة من" ٣٠ وليست قريبة من ٦٠. هناك بعض المصطلحات التي يمكن أن نستخدمها في اللغة الإنجليزية للتعبير عن الإجابة التقديرية يمكنك أن تقول:

- It's about ... إنه حوالي ...
- It's around ... إنه حوالي ...
- It's close to ... إنه قريب من ...
- It's near ... إنه قريب من ...



5 Look quickly and circle the correct estimated answer:

انظر بسرعة وضع دائرة حول الإجابة التقريبية الصحيحة:

1. 34 + 47 = 60 - 80 - 120
2. 77 + 120 = 80 - 130 - 200
3. 338 + 336 = 480 - 680 - 980
4. 1050 + 50 + 104 = 1000 - 1200 - 2000
5. 17 + 39 + 44 + 308 = 300 - 400 - 500

◉ لتقدير حاصل جمع عددين أو ثلاثة أو أكثر يجب أن تحدد الرقم الأكبر فى كل عدد. لاحظ اولاً مكونات العدد.

1	5	4	7
آلاف	مئات	عشرات	آحاد

- فمثلا فى العددين: 27 / 36

◉ ننظر للرقم الأكبر فى كل عدد حيث يمثل (2) عشرون فى (27) وتمثل (3) الرقم (30) فى (36) لذلك حاصل جمعهما سيزيد عن 50 ولن يصل إلى 70 إذا بالتقدير يصبح الناتج حوالى (60).

◉ إذا طلب تقدير جمع 472 / 423 انظر إلى الرقم الأكبر وهو المئات ومجموعات المئات فى العددين يساوى 800 لذلك إذا طلب منك التقدير بناء على مجموع 72 / 23 بالتقريب يكون الناتج 900.



Activities

1 Read and match (A) with (B):

اقرأ وصل:

A

1. The ibis could
2. Let's have a cake
3. The jerboa could
4. Does the farmer
5. The camel could

B

a. enormous ears.
b. hear the sounds of people.
c. grow vegetables?
d. for my birthday.
e. carry the sacks of beans.
f. fly high above the land.

2 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

An old man wanted to buy food for his family, but he couldn't go. He asked his little son, Sameh, to go to the market for him. Sameh accepted and went to the market. On his way to the market, **he** met an old woman who was carrying heavy bags. He offered to help her, and the woman accepted and she was very happy. At the end, the woman thanked him for his help and gave him some apples.

A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Sameh was a .... boy.
   a bad b busy c good d sad
2. The woman gave Sameh some ....
   a carrots b tomatoes c oranges d apples

B- Answer the following questions:

3. What does the underlined pronoun "he" refer to? ------------------
4. Why did the woman thank Sameh? ------------------

3 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

1. need - any - Do - help - you?

----

2. the - beans - sacks - Give - of - me.

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك فى التعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

3. first - does - Which - Gabi - animal - meet?

----

4. fly - land - The ibis - above - could - the.

----

5. telling - wasn't- He - the truth.

----

6. this way - behave in - right - Was - to - Gabi?

----

4 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

1. are you lost

----

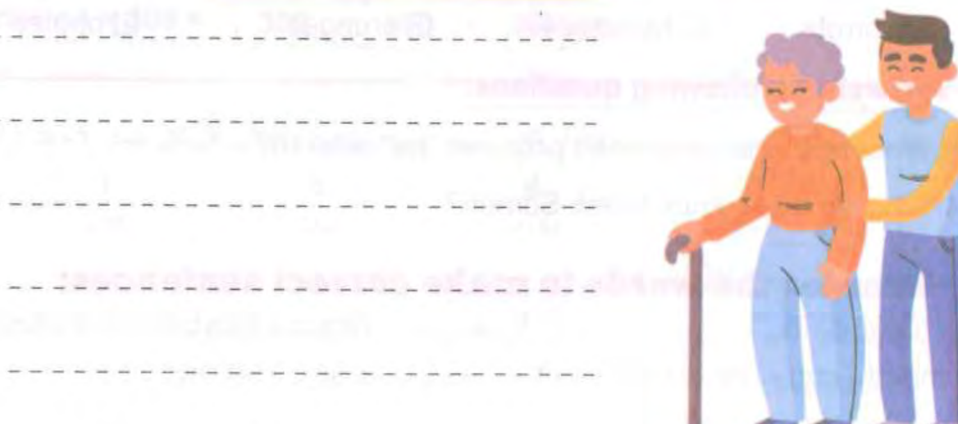
2. retaj and Karma went to the market

----

5 Write a paragraph of Forty (40) words using the following guiding elements: اكتب فقرة إنشائية من ٤٠ كلمة عن:

Helping others

offer help - respect them





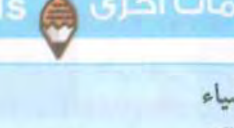
Lessons 5&6 Writing & Project



Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات:

tourist attractions	اماكن الحذب السياحي	zoo	حديقة حيوان
relaxing	مريح	markets	أسواق
delicious	لذيذ	restaurants	مطاعم
Cairo	القاهرة	shopping malls	مراكز التسوق
London	لندن	location	موقع
New York	نيويورك	history	التاريخ
waterpark	متنزه مائي	culture	الحضارة / الثقافة
park	حديقة عامة	arts	الفنون



Other words كلمات أخرى

things	أشياء	the River Thames	نهر التايمز
places	أماكن	bridges	كباري
Buckingham Palace	قصر باكنجهام	walking around	التجول
theaters	المسارح	worry	قلق
British Museum	المتحف البريطاني	plenty	الكثير
boat trip	رحلة بالقارب	it doesn't matter	لا يهم
middle	منتصف / وسط	treasures	كنوز
International Park	الحديقة الدولية	New Alamein	مدينة العلمين الجديدة
Archaeological Center	المركز الأثري	picnic	نزهة خلوية
shade	ظل		



Adjectives صفات

amazing	مذهل	fun	مرح / مَمتع
beautiful	جميل	large	كبير
cool	رائع	negative	سلبي
exciting	مثير	positive	إيجابي
famous	مشهور	perfect	مثالي
fascinating	رائعة	wonderful	رائع

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة			Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة		
Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ	Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
rain	تمطر	rained	see	يرى	saw
visit	يزور	visited	take	يأخذ	took
like	يحب	liked	choose	يختار	chose
encourage	يشجع	encouraged	feed	يطعم	fed

Study the following

1. This is one of the most exciting cities in the world. هذه واحدة من أكثر المدن إثارة في العالم.
2. It often rains here, but it doesn't matter. غالبًا ما تمطر هنا، لكن لا يهم.
3. There are lots of fun things to do. يوجد الكثير من الأشياء الممتعة التي يمكنك القيام بها.
4. You can take a relaxing boat trip on the River Thames يمكنك القيام برحلة مريحة بالقارب على نهر التايمز.
5. There are plenty of different restaurants to choose from. يوجد الكثير من المطاعم المختلفة للاختيار من بينها.
6. You can find delicious food from all over the world here! يمكنك أن تجد هنا طعامًا لذيذًا من جميع أنحاء العالم.
7. There are many exciting things to do in New Alamein. يوجد العديد من الأشياء المثيرة التي يمكنك القيام بها في العلمين الجديدة.
8. The city is on the beach so you can visit the cool sea when it's hot. المدينة على الشاطئ لذا يمكنك زيارة البحر البارد عندما يكون الجو حارًا.
9. You can visit the beautiful International Park. يمكنك زيارة الحديقة الدولية الجميلة.
10. There are some amazing treasures there. يوجد بعض الكنوز المدهشة.
11. I can't wait to see you in New Alamein. لا أستطيع الانتظار لرؤيتك في العلمين الجديدة.
12. There is a big zoo right next to the school. توجد حديقة حيوانات كبيرة بجوار المدرسة.
13. We can help to feed the animals. يمكننا المساعدة في إطعام الحيوانات.
14. There is a waterpark that is always open. يوجد حديقة مائية مفتوحة دائمًا.
15. It's free to go in! الدخول مجاني!
16. There is a wonderful market that sells all kinds of delicious food. يوجد سوق رائع يبيع جميع أنواع الأطعمة اللذيذة.
17. This is our perfect town! هذه مدينتنا المثالية!

1 Read. Which place is the writer describing? Check (✓) the correct photo below:

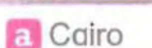
اقرأ. أي الأماكن يصفها الكاتب؟ ضع علامة (✓) على الصورة الصحيحة أسفل:

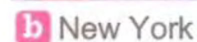


استمع إلى النص:

This is one of the most exciting[(1)] cities in the world. It often rains here, but it doesn't matter[(2)] because there are lots of fun things to do. You can go on a big red bus and visit amazing tourist attractions[(3)]. You will see famous places like Buckingham Palace, theaters, and the British Museum[(4)]. You can take a relaxing[(5)] boat trip on the River Thames[(6)] and go under the famous bridges[(7)]. All the walking around will make you hungry! But don't worry, there are plenty[(8)] of different restaurants to choose from. You can find delicious food from all over the world here!

Arabic Meaning
١- مثير
٢- لا يهم
٣- الجذب السياحي
٤- المتحف البريطاني
٥- مريح
٦- نهر التايمز
٧- كباري مشهورة
٨- الكثير



a Cairo



b New York


c London

2 Look and find. Are the adjectives positive or negative? Why?

انظر وأوجد. هل الصفات إيجابية أم سلبية؟ لماذا؟

1. Find an adjective that describes the city ....
2. Find an adjective that describes the boat trip. ....
3. Find an adjective that describes the food. ....

Tip!

When you are trying to encourage people to go to a place, use positive adjectives to describe the place.

عندما تحاول تشجيع الناس على الذهاب إلى مكان ما، استخدم الصفات الإيجابية لوصف المكان.



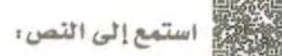
How to write a descriptive paragraph
كيفية كتابة فقرة وصفية

You are going to write a description of your town or city. You want to encourage people to visit it. Write notes about the good things about your town or city. Think about famous attractions:

سوف تكتب وصفًا لمدينتك أو بلدتك، وتريد تشجيع الناس على زيارتها. اكتب ملاحظات عن الأشياء الجيدة عن بلدتك أو مدينتك. فكر في معالم الجذب الشهيرة. ضع الآتي في الاعتبار:

- famous attractions — أماكن جذب شهيرة
- location - is it near a beach / river? — الموقع هل هي قريبة من الشاطئ / النهر؟
- history — التاريخ
- culture — الثقافة / الحضارة
- arts — الفنون

3 Read the paragraph about New Alamein. Underline the adjectives:
اقرأ الفقرة القادمة عن مدينة العلمين الجديدة. ضع خط تحت الصفات:




استمع إلى النص:



Arabic Meaning
١- العلمين الجديدة
٢- وسط
٣- الحديقة الدولية
٤- التاريخ
٥- المركز الأثري
٦- كنوز

There are many exciting things to do in New Alamein[1]. The city is on the beach so you can visit the cool sea when it's hot. This beautiful beach is 14 kms long! There is also a large, green lake right in the middle[2] of the city! You can also visit the beautiful International Park[3]. If you want to learn about the fascinating history[4] of the area, then visit the Archaeological Center[5]. There are some amazing treasures[6] there. I can't wait to see you in New Alamein.



How to make a poster about your perfect town
كيف تصنع ملصق عن مدينتك المثالية؟

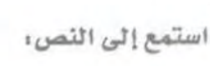
Make a poster about your perfect town. Think about the types of places that you want in your perfect town. Here are some ideas

اصنع ملصق عن مدينتك المثالية. فكر في أنواع الأماكن التي تريدها في مدينتك المثالية. إليك بعض الأفكار:

a waterpark	متنزه مائي
a park	حديقة عامة
a zoo	حديقة حيوان
markets	أسواق
restaurants	مطاعم
shopping malls	مراكز التسوق

Read and do:
اقرأ وافعل:

1. Look at the poster. Study the heading, text, and pictures.
انظروا إلى الملصق. ادرسوا العنوان والنص والصور.
2. Think about your poster. What will you include? فكروا في ملصقكم. ماذا سيتضمن؟
3. Decide who will do what. Do your research. قرروا من سيفعل ماذا. قوموا بالبحث.
4. Work together to make your poster. Check your work at the end.
اعملوا سويًا لصنع الملصق. تأكدوا من عملكم في النهاية.




استمع إلى النص:

Heading العنوان الرئيسي

Our perfect town



In our perfect town, there is a big zoo right next to the school. We can go there every afternoon after classes. We can help to feed the animals. It is really hot in our town, so there is a waterpark that is always open. It's free to go in! There is a wonderful market that sells all kinds of delicious food, like fresh bread and fresh fruit and vegetables. There is a big park with lots of trees so we can go for family picnics in the shade. This is our perfect town!

Pictures الصور

Text النص

Activities





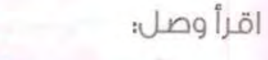
1 Listen and complete: استمع واكمل:



1. Salma lives in a small ....
2. There is a .... next to Salma's house.
3. Salma likes to play with her .... after school.
4. Salma's .... is on the other side of the park.



2 Read and match (A) with (B): اقرأ وصل:



A	B
1 You can go to the beach	a. at a big restaurant.
2 If you want to learn about history	b. at the zoo.
3 I like to feed animals	c. trip on the River Thames.
4 We go to the park for	d. visit the Archaeological Center.
5 You can take a relaxing boat	e. family picnics in the shade.
	f. when it's hot.

3 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

1. any - amazing - Are - treasures - there?

----

2. one - cities - of - This is - the most - exciting.

----

3. you - do - What - in - can - New Alamein?

----

4. find - here - You - delicious - can - food.

----

4 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. Lena and heba went to the park

----

2. where do you live, amal ?

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك في التعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.



Review

Places



bank بنك



factory مصنع



monument نُصب تذكاري



library مكتبة



shopping mall مول تجاري



square ميدان



station محطة



museum متحف



market سوق



beach شاطئ



supermarket سوبر ماركت



hotel فندق



restaurant مطعم

mint tea	شاي بالنعناع
local cuisine	مأكولات / أطباق محلية
shopping	التسوق
spend ages	يقضي الكثير من الوقت
originally	أصلاً / في الاصل
on vacation	في إجازة
evidence	دليل
monuments	آثار
paintings	رسومات
artifacts	مصنوعات يدوية
hieroglyphics	اللغة الهيروغليفية
tombs	مقابر
apologize	يعتذر
tourist attractions	أماكن الجذب السياحي
relaxing	مريح

delicious	لذيذ
Cairo	القاهرة
London	لندن
New York	نيويورك
waterpark	متنزه مائي
recognize	يتعرف على
lost	تائه
strange-looking	غريب المظهر
tell the truth	يقول الحقيقة
entertain	يرفه / يسلي
location	موقع
history	التاريخ
culture	الحضارة / الثقافة
arts	الفنون

Activities



1 Listen and complete: استمع واكمل:





1. Salma lives in a small ....
2. There is a .... next to Salma's house.
3. Salma likes to play with her .... after school.
4. Salma's .... is on the other side of the park.

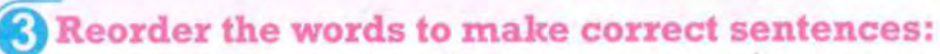
2 Read and match (A) with (B): اقرأ وصل:





A	B
1 You can go to the beach	a. at a big restaurant.
2 If you want to learn about history	b. at the zoo.
3 I like to feed animals	c. trip on the River Thames.
4 We go to the park for	d. visit the Archaeological Center.
5 You can take a relaxing boat	e. family picnics in the shade.
	f. when it's hot.

3 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:



أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

1. any - amazing - **Are** - treasures - there?

----

2. one - cities - of - **This is** - the most - exciting.

----

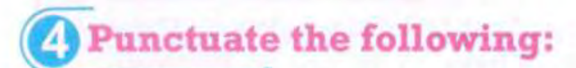
3. you - do - **What** - in - can - New Alamein?

----

4. find - here - **You** - delicious - can - food.

----

4 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:



1. Lena and heba went to the park

----

2. where do you live, amal ?

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك فى التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة.

Review



Places



bank بنك



factory مصنع



monument نُصب تذكاري



library مكتبة



shopping mall مول تجاري



square ميدان



station محطة



museum متحف



market سوق





beach شاطئ



supermarket سوبر ماركت



hotel فندق



restaurant مطعم

mint tea	شاي بالنعناع
local cuisine	مأكولات / أطباق محلية
shopping	التسوق
spend ages	يقضي الكثير من الوقت
originally	أصلا / فى الاصل
on vacation	في إجازة
evidence	دليل
monuments	آثار
paintings	رسومات
artifacts	مصنوعات يدوية
hieroglyphics	اللغة الهيروغليفية
tombs	مقابر
apologize	يعتذر
tourist attractions	أماكن الجذب السياحي
relaxing	مريح

delicious	لذيذ
Cairo	القاهرة
London	لندن
New York	نيويورك
waterpark	متنزه مائي
recognize	يتعرف على
lost	تائه
strange-looking	غريب المظهر
tell the truth	يقول الحقيقة
entertain	يرفه / يسلي
location	موقع
history	التاريخ
culture	الحضارة / الثقافة
arts	الفنون

Unit 10 Let's visit Egypt

Adjectives صفات



exciting	مثير	negative	سلبي
famous	مشهور	positive	إيجابي
fascinating	رائعة	perfect	مثالي
fun	مرح / ممتع	wonderful	رائع
cool	رائع		



Other words كلمات أخرى

traditions	تقاليد	jerboa	حيوان الجربوع
feasts	أعياد	rudely	بوقاحة
signs	علامات / إشارات	traders	التجار
scenes	مشاهد	Buckingham Palace	قصر باكنجهام
water carriers	سقايات	British Museum	المتحف البريطاني
writing symbols	رموز الكتابة	International Park	الحديقة الدولية
Alexandria Library	مكتبة الإسكندرية	Archaeological Center	المركز الأثري
sacks of beans	أكياس الفاصوليا	shade	ظل
ibis	طائر أبو منجل	it doesn't matter	لا يهم
branches	أغصان / فروع	treasures	كنوز
crowds	الحشود	New Alamein	مدينة العلمين الجديدة
enormous	هائل		

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
serve	يقدم طعام	served
remind	يُذكّر	reminded
borrow	يستعير	borrowed
own	يملك	owned
celebrate	يحتفل	celebrated
bury	يدفن	buried
push	يضغط / يدفع	pushed

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
find out	يكتشف	found out
show	يبين	showed
learn	يتعلم	learnt / learned
build	يبني	built
teach	يعلم	taught
stand	يقف	stood
choose	يختار	chose

return	يعود	returned	write	يكتب	wrote
hurry	يسرع	hurried	lose	يفقد	lost
recognize	يتعرف على	recognized	spend	يقضي	spent
pretend	يتظاهر	pretended	forget	ينسى	forgot
encourage	يشجع	encouraged	feed	يطعم	fed

Grammar قواعد لغوية

Imperative الأمر

◉ نستخدم صيغة الأمر لاعطاء تعليمات بفعل أو عدم فعل شيء.

- اولاً الأمر المثبت.

Inf. مصدر الفعل + باقي الجملة.

- Do your homework.

◉ يمكن أن يأتى قبل الفعل كلمات تدل على الطلب المهذب أو اسم شخص:

- Please, open the window.
- Ali, close the window.

- ثانيًا الامر المنفى.

Don't / Never + inf. مصدر الفعل. + باقي الجملة.

- Don't play in the street.
- Never come to school late.

◉ لاحظ لا تبدأ الجملة الأمرية بفاعل subject ولكن تبدأ بالفعل فى المصدر.

◉ لا يأتى بعد فعل الامر حرف جر (to)



◉ الإدغام diphthong في علم الصوتيات يعني دمج صوتين متحركين في مقطع صوتي واحد.

/əʊ/	go يذهب	show يبين/ عرض	below اسفل	wrote كتب	grow يزرع/ ينمو
/aɪ/	bite يعض	right صحيح/ يمين	bike دراجة	write يكتب	
/ɔɪ/	boy ولد	toy لعبة	coin عملة معدنية	enjoy يستمتع بـ	point يشير
/eɪ/	make يصنع	play يلعب	eight ثمانية	bake يخبز	ache ألم



مهارات الكتابة

Write a paragraph of Forty (40) words

Answers to Paragraphs

Lesson 1
A visit to Alexandria



1. Last week was my holiday. I went to Alexandria with my family. It's an exciting place to visit. My favorite place is the beach. We went to the beach and had a great time. I swam and played football with my brothers.

Lesson 3
Library rules



2. At the library, we should respect the rules. We should put the books on the shelf. We should walk quietly. We should not eat in the library. We should not use our mobile phones there. We should not talk loudly.

Lesson 4
Helping others



3. We should be helpful. We should offer help to anyone carrying heavy bags. We should also help old people. If a person is poor and needs money, we should give him money. If a person is hungry, we should give them food.

Activity 10
My city



4. I live in a big city. My city is very clean and beautiful. The people in my city are friendly. There are many places to visit. There are big markets, shopping malls, schools, hospitals, and parks. I love my beautiful city.

Al-Azhar Exercises



الأسئلة الخاصة بالأزهر الشريف

A- Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer: استمع وأختر:



1. Yesterday,I visited Alexandria with my .... (brothers - teachers - friends)
2. There's even a .... (beach - river - lake)

B- Language Functions

2 Read and complete the dialog with the words below: أقرأ وأكمل:

Library - reading - going

A : Where are the children ---------------------------------?

B : They are going to Alexandria ---------------------------------.

A : What are they doing?

B : They are --------------------------------- stories.

C- Reading Comprehension

3 Read and choose the correct answer: اقرأ واختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

Uncle Mahmoud has a big house with a beautiful garden outside the house. He has no children, but he has two pets. He likes keeping pets and he looks after them very well. He has a dog called "Lion" and a cat called "Pos Pos" .Uncle Mahmoud feeds his pets every day. He is a kind man.

Choose the correct answer:

1. Uncle Mahmoud has a .... house. (small - tall - big)
2. Uncle Mahmoud has a beautiful garden .... the house (outside - inside - under)
3. He has no .... (pets - house - children)
4. He has a dog called .... (Tiger - Lion - Fox)
5. Uncle Mahmoud feeds his pets every .... (day - week - year)

D- Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة

1. Come and .... lunch with us.
   a have b play c sleep
2. Alexandria is a big ....
   a farm b park c city
3. Study the lesson again and .... the exercise.
   a make b do c does
4. Keep the .... clean.
   a environment b sun c moon
5. People were buried in .... when they died.
   a parks b tombs c farms

E- The Reader

5 Choose the correct answer : اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. Mom has some .... to look at the amazing birds.
   a binoculars b books c pens
2. Malak is very pleased because she loves ....
   a birds b animals c fruits

F- Writing

6 Write a short paragraph of Four (4) sentences about:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من ٤ جمل عن :

Your city

- -
- -
- -
- -
- -



Activity ON UNIT 10



1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False): استمع واكتب (صواب) أو (خطأ):

نص الاستماع اخر الكتاب

1. Every year, I go to Alexandria with my friends.
2. Alexandria is a very big city.
3. We always stay in a house near the beach.
4. We always have lunch at a big restaurant.

2 Listen and complete: استمع واكمل:

نص الاستماع اخر الكتاب

1. If you like reading, the .... is a good place for you .
2. You should not .... in the library.
3. You cannot use your mobile .... inside the library.
4. Put your book on the .... after you read it.

3 Read and match (A) with (B): اقرأ وصل:

A	B
1 You can go to the station	a. when you visit a museum.
2 Ancient Egyptians were buried	b. to catch a train.
3 You can keep your money safely	c. at the library.
4 Don't touch paintings	d. in huge tombs.
5 We can borrow or read books	e. is our perfect town.
	f. at the bank.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

Hi friends! My name is Mai and I live in Ras El-Bar. **It** isn't a very big town near the sea. About 10,000 people live here. There are about thirty shops in Ras El-Bar and there are three supermarkets. In my town, you can get everything you need. There are five banks and a post office. There is a police station and a library. I usually go to the market with my mom.

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك ان يتعامل مع هذه الأسئلة

A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The main idea of this passage is about ....

   a Mai's family   b Ras El-Bar   c the sea   d the shops

2. Mai lives in a .... town.

   a small   b big   c large   d cute

B- Answer the following questions:

3. How many people live in Ras El-Bar?

----

4. What does the underlined pronoun "It" refer to?

----

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

1. big - city - My - very - is.

----

2. in - , please - the - Don't - library - eat.

----

3. need - Do - any - you - help?

----

4. deor - open - Please - the.

----

6 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

1. which place would you like to visit

----

2. let's have a cake for my birthday

----

7 Write a paragraph of Forty (40) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من ٤٠ كلمة عن:

My city

many places - near the river



Theme



Being responsible

Unit 11

Getting out in the fresh air

الخروج فى الهواء الطلق

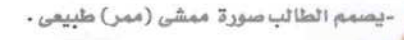






Objectives of the Unit أهداف الوحدة

1. Listen, read, research, and write about nature trails.
   - يستمع الطالب ويقرأ ويبحث ويكتب عن ممرات التنزه الطبيعية.
2. Recognize adjectives and adverbs.
   - يتعرف الطالب على الصفات والظروف / الأحوال.
3. Learn words about nature.
   - يتعلم الطالب كلمات عن الطبيعة.
4. Listen to a conversation about hiking.
   - يستمع الطالب إلى محادثة عن التجول (السير على الأقدام لمسافات طويلة).
5. Read about hiking the Red Sea Mountain Trail.
   - يقرأ الطالب عن التجول فى ممشى (ممر) البحر الأحمر الجبلى.
6. Read and say words with /n/ and /ŋ/ sounds.
   - يقرأ الطالب ويقول كلمات تشتمل على الأصوات /ŋ/ و /n/ .
7. Write text messages.
   - يكتب الطالب رسائل نصية
8. Design a nature trail.
   - يصمم الطالب صورة ممشى (ممر) طبيعى .



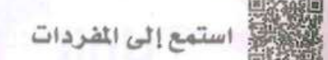






LESSON 1 ★ Getting out in nature

Key vocabulary





استمع إلى المفردات



leaf ورقة شجر

city مدينة



village قرية



tree شجرة



plant نبات





grass عشب / حشائش



hill تل



rock صخرة



stream مجرى / جدول مائي
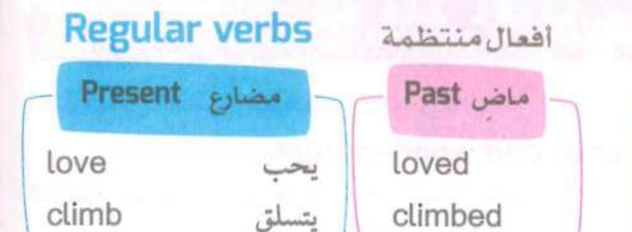
Other words كلمات أخرى

get out	يخرج
river	نهر
feeling	ملمس / إحساس
branch	فرع / غصن
difficult	صعب
like	مثل
hard	صلب
famous	مشهور

weather	الطقس
wooden	خشبي
trunk	جذع / ساق (شجرة)
town	بلدة (مدينة صغيرة)
Hurghada	مدينة الغردقة
large stone	حجر كبير
building	مبنى
background	خلفية (لصورة مثلاً)

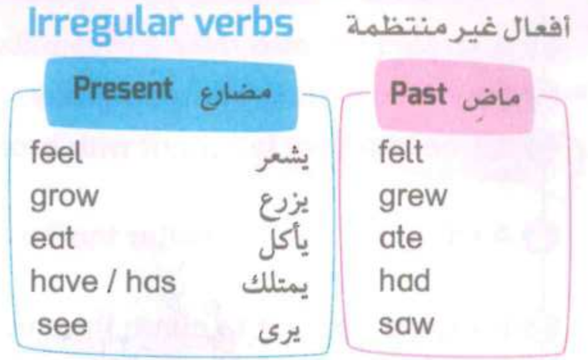
Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

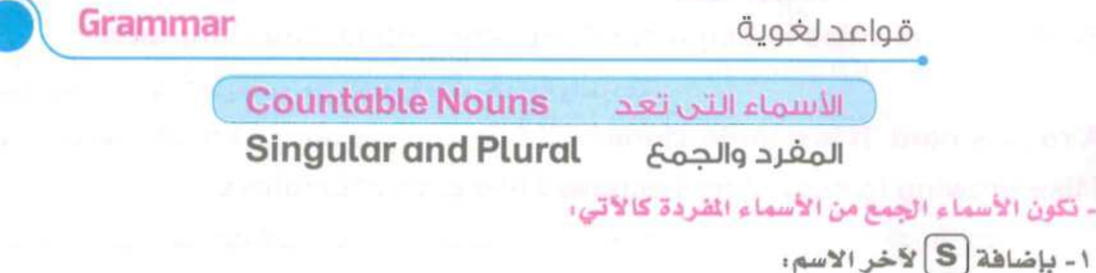


Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
love	يحب	loved
climb	يتسلق	climbed

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة



Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
feel	يشعر	felt
grow	يزرع	grew
eat	يأكل	ate
have / has	يمتلك	had
see	يرى	saw



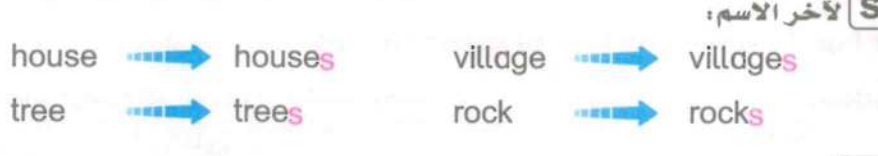
Grammar قواعد لغوية

Countable Nouns الأسماء التي تعد

Singular and Plural المفرد والجمع

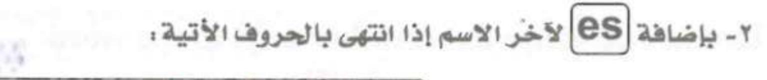
- تكون الأسماء الجمع من الأسماء المفردة كالآتي:

١- بإضافة s لآخر الاسم:

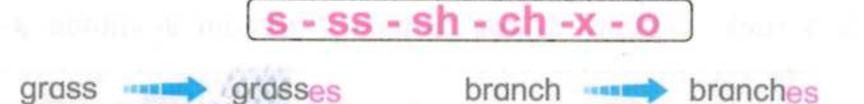


house → houses   village → villages

tree → trees   rock → rocks



٢- بإضافة es لآخر الاسم إذا انتهى بالحروف الآتية:



s - ss - sh - ch -x - o

grass → grasses   branch → branches



٣- بإضافة ies إذا انتهى الاسم بحرف y وكان قبله حرف ساكن حيث يحذف y

- أما اذا سبق حرف y حرف متحرك لا يحذف ويضاف s فقط.



حرف ساكن + y → y ies
city → cities

حرف متحرك + y → ys
boy → boys

٤- بإضافة ves لآخر الاسم اذا انتهى ب f / fe حيث تحذف كما يلي:

leaf → leaves   knife → knives

٥- هناك أسماء شاذة لا تتبع القاعدة ولها جمع خاص بها تحفظ كما هى:



tooth → teeth   mouse → mice   ox → oxen

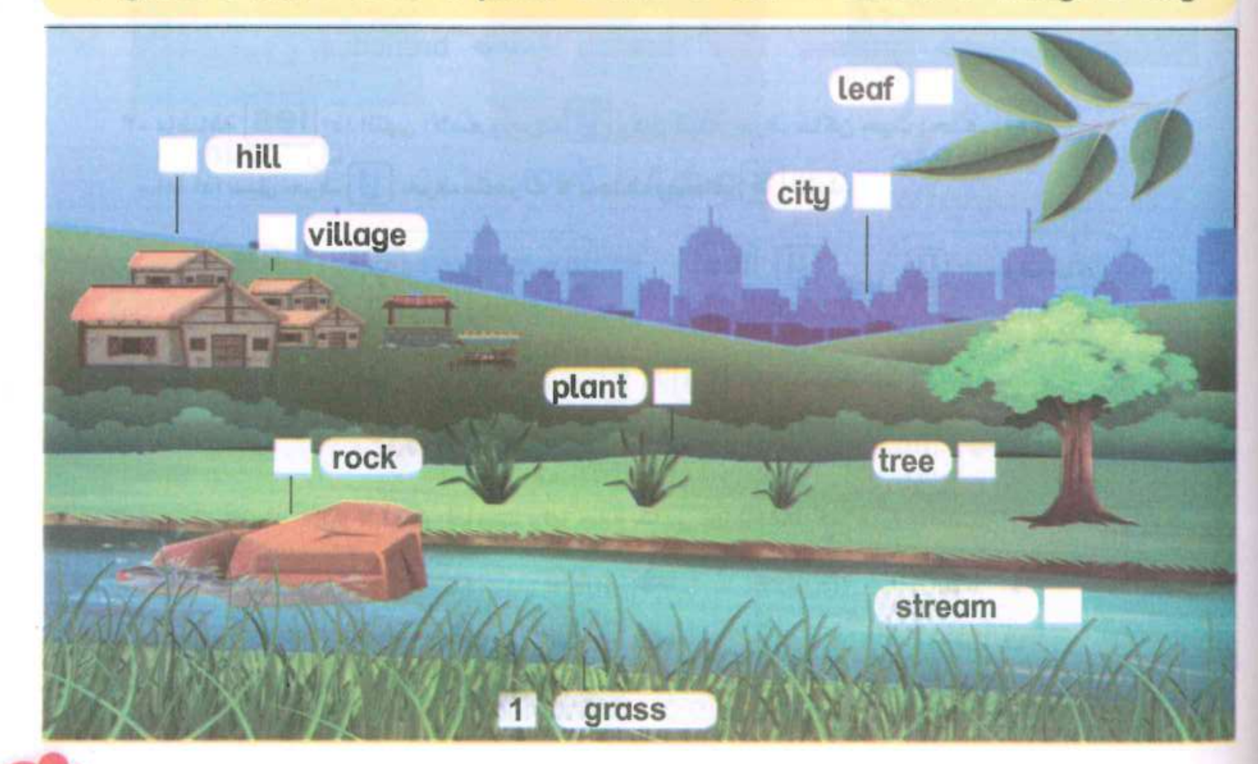
foot → feet   man → men   woman → women

Study the following

1. A stream is like a river, but smaller.
الجدول يشبه النهر، ولكنه أصغر.
2. I love the feeling of green grass.
أحب ملمس العشب/ الحشائش الخضراء.
3. A tree is a very tall plant with branches and wooden trunk.
الشجرة عبارة عن نبات طويل ذو أفرع وجزع خشبى.
4. A village is much smaller than a town or city.
القرية أصغر كثيراً من بلدة أو مدينة.
5. It's quite difficult to climb that hill because it's very high.
إنه من الصعب أن تتسلق هذا التل لأنه مرتفع جداً.
6. Some famous cities in Egypt are Cairo, Alexandria, and Hurghada.
بعض المدن الشهيرة فى مصر هى القاهرة والأسكندرية والغردقة.
7. A rock is hard. It is a large stone.
تتصف الصخرة بالصلابة. هى حجر كبير.
8. I like growing tomato plant because I like eating tomatoes.
أحب زراعة نبات الطماطم لأنى أحب أكل الطماطم.
9. That plant has flowers and lots of green leaves.
إن لهذا النبات أزهار وكثير من أوراق الشجر الخضراء.

1 Listen and write the number next to the word:
استمع واكتب الرقم بجوار الكلمة:

1- grass 2- hill 3- rock 4- plant 5- tree 6- leaf 7- stream 8- village 9- city



2 Listen again and say the words:
استمع مرة أخرى وقل الكلمات:

3 Complete the sentences with the words from Exercise 1. Then listen and check:
أكمل الجمل بالكلمات من تمرين ١. ثم استمع وتأكد:

نص الاستماع اخر الكتاب

1. A ....stream.... is like a river, but smaller.
2. I love the feeling of green ....
3. A .... is a very tall plant with branches and a wooden trunk.
4. A .... is much smaller than a town or city.
5. It's quite difficult to climb that .... because it's very high.
6. Some famous .... in Egypt are Cairo, Alexandria, and Hurghada.
7. A .... is hard. It is a large stone.
8. I like growing tomato .... because I like eating tomatoes.
9. That plant has flowers and lots of green ....

4 Describe the photo below. Use words from Exercise 1. Think about the buildings, nature, and weather:
صف الصورة بالأسفل. استخدم الكلمات من تمرين ١. فكر فى المبانى والطبيعة والطقس:

1. I can see some ....
2. In the background I can see ....
3. ....
4. ....



Activities



1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False): استمع واكتب (صواب) أو (خطأ)

نص الاستماع اخر الكتاب

1. Ali went to the city.
2. He saw many trees.
3. He helped his uncle to plant apples.
4. He slept on the grass.

2 Read and match (A) with (B): اقرأ وصل:

A	B
1 A stream is like	a. with branches and a wooden trunk.
2 A tree is a very tall plant	b. you see in the photo?
3 Cairo is a famous	c. a river, but smaller.
4 That plant has	d. flowers and lots of green leaves.
5 What can	e. city in Egypt.
	f. under my feet.



3 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

1. like - tomato - I - growing - plant.

---

2. famous - Alexandria - Egypt - is - in - city - a.

---

3. hill - high - The - is - very.

---

4. is - smaller - than - A village - a town - much.

---

4 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. do you like growing tomato plant

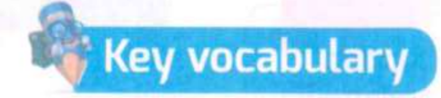
---

2. It s quite difficult to climb that hill

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك في التعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.



Lesson 2 ★ Nature trail weekend



Key vocabulary



استمع إلى المفردات

go on a trail	يذهب للسير في ممشى (درب)
date	تاريخ اليوم
sounds like fun	يبدو ممتعًا



Other words كلمات أخرى

hike	التجول (السير لمسافات طويلة)	diver	غطاس
view	منظر	invitation	دعوة
weekend	عطلة نهاية الأسبوع	alone	بمفرده
trip	رحلة	swimmer	سباح
across	عَبْر	tortoise	سلحفاة برية
Spanish	اللغة الإسبانية	race	سباق
worker	عامل	runner	عدّاء
designer	مصمم (شيء)	How's life?	كيف تصير الأمور؟
speaker	متحدث	take photos	يلتقط صور



Adjectives صفات

cool	رائع	good	جيد
brave	شجاع	bad	سيء
fine	رائع / جميل	heavy	ثقيل / غزير
boring	ممل	sad	حزين
sunny	مشمس	careful	حريص
slow	بطيء	nice	لطيف
quick / fast	سريع	nervous	متوتر / عصبي
happy	سعيد	active	نشيط
hard	صعب/ صلب	polite	مؤدب

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة		Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة	
Present مضارع	Past ماض	Present مضارع	Past ماض
decide يقرر	decided	swim يسبح	swam
prefer يفضل	preferred	write يكتب	wrote
sound يبدو	sounded	sing يغني	sang
dive يغطس	dived	drive يقود (سيارة)	drove
accept يقبل	accepted	run يجري	ran
contact يتصل	contacted	win يفوز	won
invite يدعو	invited	leave يغادر	left
guess يخمن	guessed	take يأخذ	took

Definitions تعريفات

nature trail (n) ممشى (ممر) طبيعي: A place you go for a hike in nature to see all the plants and animals.

Grammar قواعد لغوية

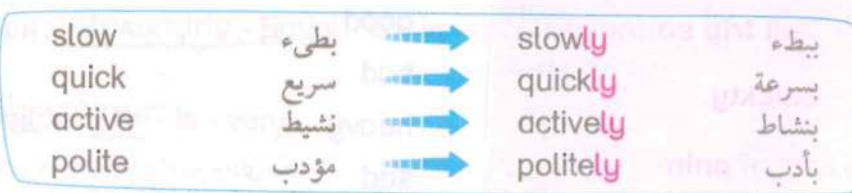
1 الصفات Adjectives

- تصف الصفة الاسم وتأتي قبله.
  - I met a nice man. قابلت رجلاً لطيفًا.
- تأتي الصفة بعد فعل يكون (verb to be):
  - Ex. The boy is brave. الصبي شجاع.
- يمكن أن يأتي قبل الاسم أكثر من صفة، ومثال ذلك:
  - Ex. It was a nice sunny day. كان يوم مشمس لطيف.

2 الظروف / الأحوال Adverbs

- تستخدم الأحوال لوصف الفعل وتوضح لنا كيف وقع الفعل.
- تتكون الأحوال بإضافة ly آخر الصفة.

Examples of adverbs:



Adjective		Adverb	
slow	بطيء	slowly	ببطء
quick	سريع	quickly	بسرعة
active	نشيط	actively	بنشاط
polite	مؤدب	politely	بأدب

Ex. She walked slowly down the road. سارت ببطء في الطريق.
Ex. He moved quickly. تحرك بسرعة.

- إذا انتهت الصفة بـ (y) تحذف ويضاف مكانها (ily).

happy	سعيد	happily	بسعادة
heavy	غزير (للمطر)	heavily	بغزارة

Ex. He did his homework happily. قام بعمل الواجب المنزلي بسعادة.
Ex. It rained heavily. أمطرت بغزارة.

لاحظ بعض الصفات يمكن أن تستخدم كأحوال بدون إضافة (ly) مثل:

fast / hard / late

Adjective		Adverb	
fast	سريع	fast	بسرعة
hard	صعب / شاق	hard	بجد
late	متأخر	late	متأخرًا

Ex. She drove the car fast. (~~not fastly~~)

لاحظ تحويل الصفة good إلى ظرف / حال:

good	جيد	well	جيدًا / بشكل جيد

Ex. She spoke English well. (~~not goodly~~)

لاحظ الصفة hard إذا أضيف لها ly يتغير معناها كالآتي:

hard	صلب / صعب / شاق	hardly	نادراً ما / بالكاد

Ex. He worked hard. (~~not hardly~~)

Study the following

1. My family and I want to go on a trail to Wadi Degla.
   - نريد أنا وعائلتي أن نذهب للممشى إلى وادي دجلة.
2. Wadi Degla is cool because you can see lots of animals.
   - وادي دجلة مكان رائع لأنك يمكنك رؤية الكثير من الحيوانات.
3. You can swim at the Blue Lagoon!
   - يمكنك السباحة في البحيرة الشاطئية الزرقاء.
4. I know you walk quickly and swim well.
   - أعرف أنك تسير بسرعة وتسبح جيداً.
5. The nature trail trip sounds like fun.
   - تبدو رحلة الممشى الطبيعي ممتعة.
6. I can swim quickly.
   - يمكنني السباحة بسرعة.
7. There are lots of animals in Wadi Degla.
   - هناك الكثير من الحيوانات في وادي دجلة.
8. Reem is a good swimmer.
   - ريم سباحة ماهرة.
9. My friend is a nice person.
   - صديقي شخص لطيف.
10. The tortoise walked slowly across the grass.
    - سارت السلحفاة عَبْر الحشائش ببطء.
11. She ran quickly. She won the race!
    - جرت بسرعة. فازت بالسباق!
12. My dad speaks Spanish really well.
    - يتحدث والدي الإسبانية بشكل جيد جدًا.

1 Listen and read the emails. Where and when do they decide to go?

استمع واقرأ رسائل البريد الإلكترونى. أين ومتى قرروا أن يذهبوا؟



Tapescript نص الاستماع   استمع إلى النص:

Arabic Meaning

١- ممشى طبيعى
٢- خمن ماذا؟
٣- وادى دجلة
٤- البحيرة الزرقاء
٥- مدينة دهب
٦- يقرر
٧- رائع
٨- يسبح
٩- بسرعة
١٠- جيداً
١١- تواريخ

From : Dina
To : Reem
Subject : Nature trail[1] weekend

Hi Reem,

How's life?

Guess what[2]?My family and I want to go on a trail to Wadi Degla[3] or the Blue Lagoon[4] at Dahab[5]. Mom said I can take a friend, and I want to take you! Can you come?

Mom said you and I can decide[6] which we like best of the two places. Wadi Degla is cool[7] because you can see lots of animals, but you can swim[8] at the Blue Lagoon!

I know you walk quickly[9] and swim well[10], so which nature trail do you like?

Also, what dates[11] do you prefer, 13-14 July or 20-21 July?

Bye for now!

Dina

Tapescript نص الاستماع   استمع إلى النص

Arabic Meaning

١- الحياة رائعة
٢- تبدو ممتعة
٣- حقاً
٤- جميلة
٥- نغطس
٦- شجاعة
٧- تتصل بـ

From : Reem
To : Dina
Subject : Re: Nature trail weekend

Hi Dina,

Life's great![1] How are you?

The nature trail trip sounds like fun[2], and I really[3] want to come! I think the Blue Lagoon is fine[4] because we can swim and dive[5]! Yes, I can swim quickly, but you're very brave[6]! Remember when you dived from that rock? I just talked to my mom and the weekend 20- 21 July is good for me. She's going to call[7] your mom to check everything. Can't wait to see you!

Reem

2 Read the emails again. Match the sentence halves:

إقرأ رسائل البريد الإلكترونى مرة أخرى. صل أنصاف الجمل:

A	B
1 Dina	a. both like swimming.
2 Reem	b. invites Reem to go on a nature trail.
3 Dina and Reem	c. is going to contact Dina's mom.
4 Reem's mom	d. accepts the invitation.

3 Decide if the sentences are True (T) or False (F). Correct the false ones:

قرر إن كانت الجمل صحيحة أم خطأ. صحح الجمل الخطأ:

1. Reem wrote the email to Dina first. F
   Dina wrote the email to Reem first.
2. Dina wants to go on a trail alone.
3. There are lots of animals in Wadi Degla.
4. Reem isn't going trailing with Dina.
5. Reem is a good swimmer.
6. Reem thinks that the nature trail trip could be boring.
7. Reem says Dina is a brave diver.
8. Reem thinks that the weekend 20-21 July is good for her.
9. Reem's mom wants her to go for a trail with a friend.
10. Dina's mom is going to call Reem's mom to check everything.

4 Change these adjectives to adverbs:

حول هذه الصفات إلى ظروف:

Adjectives	Adverbs
happy	happily
slow	----------------
quick	----------------
heavy	----------------
sad	----------------
hard	----------------
good	----------------
careful	----------------

5 Circle the correct word for the sentences:

ضع دائرة حول الكلمات الصحيحة:

1. My friend is a (nice) / nicely person.
2. My sister says I sing bad / badly.
3. The man opened the door nervous / nervously.
4. Adam drove the car fast / fastly.
5. At the end of the story, they all lived happy / happily ever after.

6 Complete the sentences with some of the words from Exercise 4:

أكمل الجمل ببعض من الكلمات من تمرين ٤ :

1. The tortoise walked ------ slowly ------ across the grass.
2. She ran ---------------------. She won the race!
3. It was raining very ---------------------- when I left home.
4. My dad speaks Spanish really ----------------.
5. I did my homework --------------. I didn't want to make mistakes!

7 Make sentences with the adjectives in the box as adverbs:

كون جملاً مستخدماً الصفات فى القائمة كظروف :

good - quick - bright

1. I can speak English well.
2. --
3. --

8 Look at the example and complete the sentences using the adjectives and the adverbs properly:

أنظر إلى المثال وأكمل العبارات مستخدماً الصفات والظروف بشكل صحيح :

1. Wael swims well. He is a good swimmer.
2. Samir is an active worker. He works ---------.
3. Salma runs quickly. She is a ---------- runner.
4. Jailan speaks politely. She is a -------- speaker.
5. Shorouk is a hard worker. She works ---------.
6. Sahar sings nicely. She is a ---------- singer.
7. Hatem is a clever designer. He designs -------.



Did you know? هل تعلم؟

A fantastic hiking trail in Egypt is the Nuweiba Trail in Sinai. You can see the famous Colored Canyon there.

يعد ممشى التجول في مدينة نويبع فى سيناء فى مصر ممشى رائع. تستطيع رؤية الوادي الملون الشهير هناك.

Activities

1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False): استمع واكتب (صواب) أو (خطأ):

نص الاستماع اخر الكتاب

1. Wadi Degla is a bad place.
2. Wadi Degla is cool.
3. I can swim at the Blue Lagoon.
4. I will visit Wadi Degla with my family in summer.

2 Read and match (A) with (B): اقرأ وصل:

A	B
1 The tortoise walked slowly	a. She won the race!
2 She ran quickly.	b. the Blue Lagoon!
3 Reem is a good	c. across the grass.
4 You can swim at	d. a nice person.
5 My friend is	e. a nice place.
	f. swimmer.

3 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

1. Spanish - well - My dad - really - speaks.
2. happily - He - his - did - homework.
3. you, - are - Dina - How?
4. fun - like - trail trip - sounds - The nature

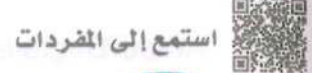
4 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1- yes, I can swim quickly
2- did he work hard

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك فى التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة



Lesson 3 ★ The Red Sea Mountain Trail




Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات



sunglasses
نظارة شمس



hiking التجول
(السير لمسافات طويلة)

hiking shoes
حذاء التجول



scarf
كوفية/وشاح



blanket بطانية



Hiking things
الأشياء المستخدمة في التجول



water bottle
زجاجة مياه



map خريطة

hat قبعة

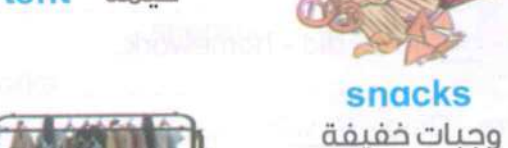


warm sweater
سترة لحفظ الدفء



tent خيمة

snacks
وجبات خفيفة



clothes
ملابس

fascinating	مبهر / فاتن
mountain trail	ممشى (ممر) جبلي
route	طريق / مسار

Help your child learn about hiking. ساعد طفلك يتعلم عن التجول (السير لمسافات طويلة).

Other words كلمات أخرى

the countryside	الريف
long-distance	ذو مسافة طويلة
through	خلال
wonderful	رائع
tourism project	مشروع سياحي
community	مجتمع
Maaza people	شعب قبيلة المعازة البدوية
wind	الرياح
neck	عنق / رقبة
culture	الثقافة
history	التاريخ
ancient	قديم
trading	التجارة
hunting	الصيد
century	قرن (١٠٠ عام)
guide	مرشد
hiker	رحالة / متجول
geography	الجغرافيا
sand	الرمال
heat	الحرارة
prepared	مستعد
look after	يعتني بـ
get hungry	يجوع
get thirsty	يعطش
get cold	يشعر بالبرد
fall over	يسقط

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
open	يفتح / يبدأ العمل	opened
preserve	يحافظ على	preserved
follow	يتبع (مسار)	followed
complete	يكمل	completed
hike	يتجول	hiked
protect	يحمي	protected

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
tell	يخبر	told
take	يستغرق (وقت)	took
get	يصبح	got
run	يمتد	ran



Definitions تعريفات

hiking (n) التجول (المشي لمسافات طويلة)	a long walk in the countryside

Study the following

1. What are you taking on the Red Sea Mountain Trail ?
   - ماذا ستأخذ معك إلى ممشى البحر الأحمر الجبلي؟
2. The trail follows ancient trading and hunting routes.
   - الممشى يتبع طرق التجارة والصيد القديمة.
3. The Maaza people used these routes for centuries.
   - استخدم شعب قبيلة المعازة البدوية هذه الطرق لقرون من الزمن.
4. They look after the trail carefully.
   - يعتنون بالممشى بعناية.
5. They work as guides.
   - يعملون كمرشدين.
6. They tell the hikers about their fascinating culture.
   - يخبرون المتجولين عن ثقافتهم المبهرة.
7. It takes around ten days to complete the trail.
   - يستغرق إكمال الممشى حوالي عشرة أيام.
8. I'm taking sunglasses to protect my eyes.
   - سوف آخذ نظارة شمس لحماية عيني.
9. I'm taking a scarf to protect my head and neck.
   - سوف آخذ كوفية لحماية رأسي وعنقي.
10. The sun can get very bright on the walk.
    - يمكن أن تسطع الشمس بشدة على الممشى.
11. How is it long?
    - كم تبلغ مسافته؟
12. Who looks after the trail?
    - من يعتني بالممشى؟
13. It's going to be such fun.
    - سيكون هذا ممتعاً.

1 Read the text. What is the Red Sea Mountain Trail? Answer the questions:

اقرأ النص. ما هو ممشى البحر الأحمر الجبلي؟ أجب عن الأسئلة

1. Who looks after the trail? ____________________.
2. How long is it? ____________________.



Tapescript نص الاستماع — استمع إلى النص

The Red Sea Mountain Trail was the first long - distance(1) hiking(2) trail to open in Egypt. It runs(3) for around 170 kms through(4) the wonderful mountains near Hurghada. It is a community(5) tourism project(6). It helps(7) the local Maaza people(8) preserve(9) their culture(10) and history. The trail follows ancient trading(11) and hunting routes(12) in the Eastern Desert. The Maaza people used these routes for centuries(13). They look after the trail carefully and work as guides(14). They tell the hikers(15) about the geography(16) and history of this wonderful place. They also tell the hikers about their fascinating(17) culture. It takes around ten days to complete the trail.



Arabic Meaning

1- ذو مسافة طويلة
2- التجول
3- يمتد
4- خلال
5- مجتمع
6- مشروع سياحي
7- يساعد
8- شعب المعازة المحلي
9- يحافظ على
10- ثقافة
11- تجارة
12- طرق الصيد
13- قرون من الزمان
14- مرشدون
15- المتجولون
16- الجغرافيا
17- مبهر

2 Match the words to the photos. Then listen and check:

صل الكلمات بالصور. ثم استمع وتأكد.

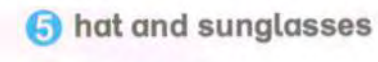
a  [ ]

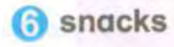
b [ ]



c  [1]

d [ ]







e [ ]

g    [ ]

f  [ ]

1. hiking shoes
2. scarf
3. blanket
4. water bottle
5. hat and sunglasses
6. snacks
7. map

3 Work with a partner. You're going on the Red Sea Mountain Trail with your friends. Think about what you need to pack:

اعمل مع زميلك. ستذهب إلى ممشى البحر الأحمر الجبلي مع أصدقائك. فكر فيما تريد أن تأخذه معك:

clothes - a hat and sunglasses - hiking shoes - map - scarf
snacks - a tent - warm sweater / blankets

4 Listen to these speakers going on the Red Sea Mountain Trail. Check (✓) what they are taking on the trail:

- استمع إلى المتحدثين الذاهبين إلى ممشى البحر الأحمر الجبلي. ضع علامة صح أمام ما سيأخذونه معهم إلى الممشى:

	Sherif	Ramy	Lama	Nesma
hiking shoes				
scarf				
blanket				
map				
water bottles				
hat				
snacks				
sunglasses				

Tapescript نص الاستماع

استمع إلى النص: 

Interviewer : Hi Sherif, what are you taking on the Red Sea Mountain Trail?

Sherif : Hi! Well, I want to protect(1) my feet so I'm taking some hiking shoes(2). I know there are a lot of hills and rocks so I don't want to fall over(3)! I'm also going to take some snacks(4) from home so I don't get hungry(5).

Arabic Meaning
١- يحمي
٢- حذاء التجول
٣- يسقط
٤- وجبات خفيفة
٥- يجوع

Interviewer : Hi Ramy, what are you taking on the Red Sea Mountain Trail?

Ramy : My friend said it gets very hot on the trail in the places where there are no streams, so I'm taking a hat(6) for my head. I'm also going to take a blanket(7) in case I get cold(8) at night.

Interviewer : Hi Lama, what are you taking on the Red Sea Mountain Trail?

Lama : Someone told me you can sometimes get sand in your eyes on the Red Sea Mountain Trail, so I'm taking a scarf(9) to protect my head and eyes. The other important thing for me is to take lots of water bottles(10) - I seem to drink more than other people so I want to be prepared(11).

Interviewer : Hi Nesma, what are you taking on the Red Sea Mountain Trail?

Nesma : I love checking the route so I'm taking a map(12). And I'm going to take my cool sunglasses(13) too to protect my eyes. It's going to be such fun!

٦- قبعة
٧- بطانية
٨- يشعر بالبرد
٩- وشاح
١٠- زجاجات مياه
١١- مستعد
١٢- خريطة
١٣- نظارة شمس

5 Listen again. Answer the questions:

استمع مرة أخرى. أجب عن الأسئلة:

- Who's worried about ....

1- the wind and sand? Lama.

2- the heat? ....

3- their feet? ....

6 Complete the sentences with some of the words from Exercise 4:

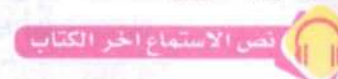
أكمل الجمل ببعض من الكلمات من تمرين ٤:

- I get thirsty when I hike, so I always take a water bottle .
- The sun can get very bright on the walk, so take ....to protect your eyes.
- Shaza is really good at reading the .... to tell us where to go.
- There's a wind in the afternoon, so you should take a.................. to protect your head and neck.

Activities

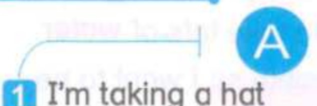


1 Listen and complete: استمع وأكمل:



1. Hatem is going on the Red Sea Mountain ....
2. He is taking .... to protect his eyes.
3. He is taking .... to protect his head.
4. He is taking a .... in case he gets cold.

2 Read and match (A) with (B): اقرأ وصل:



A	B
1 I'm taking a hat	a. it long?
2 Shaza is really good at	b. on the Red Sea Mountain Trail?
3 How is	c. to protect my head.
4 I'm taking some snacks so	d. reading the map.
5 What are you taking	e. I don't get cold.
	f. I don't get hungry.

3 Reorder the words to make correct sentences: أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

1. looks - trail - Who - after - the?

----

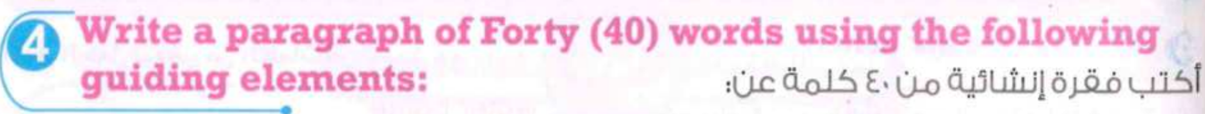
2. taking - to protect - I'm - my eyes - sunglasses.

----

3. carefully - after - look - trail - They - the.

----

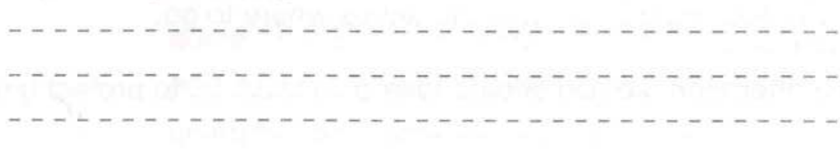
4. sun - The - can - get - very - bright.



4 Write a paragraph of Forty (40) words using the following guiding elements: أكتب فقرة إنشائية من ٤٠ كلمة عن:

"The Red Sea Mountain Trail"

1- Who looks after the trail?
2- What are you taking on the Red Sea Mountain Trail ?






Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك في التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة.



Lesson 4 ★ Word Building



Vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات



English	Arabic
exciting	مثير
ocean	محيط
incredible	لا يصدق
during	أثناء
show	عرض
card	بطاقة
medicine	دواء
feel better	يشعر بتحسن
suitcase	حقيبة سفر

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
pack	يحزم / يعبأ	packed
look	ينظر	looked
weigh	يزن	weighed
stop	يتوقف	stopped

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
sing	يغني	sang
give	يعطي	gave
ride	يركب (دراجة)	rode
stand	يقف	stood
hear	يسمع	heard

Study the following

1. My dad says that work is very stressful. – يقول والدى أن العمل مجهد جداً.
2. The card you gave me was very wonderful. – البطاقة التى أعطيتها لى كانت رائعة.
3. I ride my bike on the road. – أركب دراجتي على الطريق.
4. She packed her suitcase. – عبأت حقيبتها.
5. I can see beautiful birds singing. – يمكنني رؤية طيور جميلة تغني.
6. I can see a brown rabbit standing quietly. – يمكنني رؤية أرنب بني اللون يقف في هدوء.
7. The king is wearing a big ring. – يرتدى الملك خاتماً كبيراً.
8. He's not looking at the sun. – لا ينظر إلى الشمس.
9. The phone rang. – رن الهاتف.
10. He heard a big bang. – سمع صوت فرقعة شديد.

Grammar قواعد لغوية

Word Endings

نهايات الكلمات -ful /-fully

◉ نستخدم الأسماء لنشير إلى الأشخاص أو الأشياء أو الأماكن.

◉ هناك أسماء فى اللغة الإنجليزية يضاف لها نهايات تحولها إلى صفات، من هذه النهايات (-ful) ونهايات تحولها إلى ظروف / أحوال، من هذه النهايات (-fully)

◉ إرجع إلى شرح الصفات والظروف (Lesson 2) Adjectives and Adverbs

Noun الإسم	Adjective الصفة	Adverb الظرف/الحال
beauty الجمال	beautiful جميل	beautifully بشكل جميل

لاحظ: حذف حرف (y) وتحويله إلى (i) عند إضافة النهايات -ful / -fully للاسم beauty

Ex. The Red Sea Mountain Trail is very exciting and beautiful.

Ex. She sang beautifully during the show.

More Examples :

Noun الإسم	Adjective الصفة	Adverb الظرف/الحال
help المساعدة	helpful متعاون / مفيد	helpfully بشكل مساعد
care العناية / الحرص	careful حريص	carefully بحرص / بعناية
thought فكرة	thoughtful عميق التفكير	thoughtfully بتفكر
stress الإجهاد	stressful مجهد	stressfully بإجهاد
meaning المعنى	meaningful مفهوم	meaningfully بشكل مفهوم
wonder إندهاش / تعجب	wonderful عجيب	wonderfully بشكل عجيب
joy المرح	joyful مفرح	joyfully بمرح
hope الأمل	hopeful متفائل	hopefully على أمل
pain الألم	painful شاق / مؤلم	painfully بشقاء / بألم

◉ هناك نهايات أخرى تحول الإسم إلى صفة مثل (y) ونهايات تحوله إلى ظرف / حال مثل (ily).

Noun الإسم	Adjective الصفة	Adverb الظرف/الحال
hunger الجوع	hungry جائع	hungrily بنهم / بجوع

◉ هناك أسماء لا تتغير عند تحويلها إلى صفات وتحولها إلى ظروف / أحوال بإضافة (ly).

Noun الإسم	Adjective الصفة	Adverb الظرف/الحال
quiet الهدوء	quiet هادئ	quietly بهدوء

1 Change the words from nouns to adjectives: غير الكلمات من أسماء إلى صفات:

1. help helpful
2. thought ....
3. beauty ....
4. stress ....
5. care ....
6. meaning ....

2 Complete the table with the correct part of speech:

أكمل الجدول بالجزء الصحيح من أجزاء الكلام:

Noun	Adjective	Adverb
wonder	1 wonderful	2 ....
3.	beautiful	4 ....
joy	5	joyfully
hope	6	7 ....
8	9	painfully

3 Complete the sentences with adjectives from Exercise 1:

أكمل الجمل بصفات من تمرين ١ :

1. My dad doesn't like working 12-hour days. He says it's very stressful .
2. The card you gave me was very .... Thank you.
3. The medicine the doctor gave me was very .... I feel better!
4. I am very .... when I ride my bike on the road.

4 Choose the correct option to complete the sentences a, b, or c:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. It was the most .... bird I saw on the trail.

a wonder b wonderful c wonderfully



2. She packed her suitcase for the trip with a lot of ....

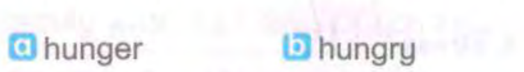
a care b careful c carefully

3. There is so much natural .... in the Red Sea at Hurghada.

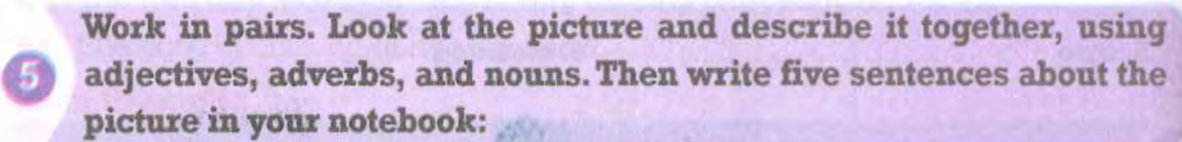


a beauty b beautiful c beautifully

4. The cat ate .... from the bowl.



a hunger b hungry c hungrily



5 Work in pairs. Look at the picture and describe it together, using adjectives, adverbs, and nouns. Then write five sentences about the picture in your notebook:

إعمل مع زميلك. أنظر إلى الصورة وصفها مستخدماً الصفات والظروف والأسماء. ثم أكتب خمس جمل عن الصورة:

1. I can see beautiful birds singing.
2. I can see a brown rabbit standing quietly.
3. --
4. --
5. --





Pronunciation

The sound /n/ and the sound /ŋ/

-يتشابه الصوتان فى الشكل ولكنهما ينطقا بشكل مختلف.

ينطق الصوت /n/ كما في كلمة (nose) بحبس الهواء فى الفم بمقدمة اللسان

ينطق الصوت /ŋ/ كما فى كلمة sing / siŋ / بحبس الهواء بمؤخرة اللسان حيث يشبه هذا الصوت الغنة

استمع إلى المفردات

/n/



nose أنف



sun الشمس

know يعرف

natural طبيعي

ton طن

/ŋ/



hiking التجول



tongue اللسان



bang صوت فرقعة



finger أصبع

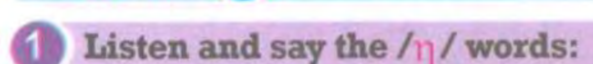


ring خاتم / يرن

rang رن



king ملك



1 Listen and say the /ŋ/ words: استمع وانطق الكلمات:

1- hiking 2- tongue 3- finger

2 Listen and say the /n/ words: استمع وانطق الكلمات:

1- nose 2- know 3- natural 4- ton

3 Listen and complete the poem with the words in the box. Then say:

استمع واكمل القصيدة بالكلمات التى فى القائمة ثم قل:









bang - ring - ton - rang - king - sun

1. I can see a ....king........ .
2. He's wearing a big...................... .
3. He's not looking at the..................... .
4. He thinks it weighs a....................... .
5. Then the phone ....
6. And he heard a big...................... !



Adding mixed numbers جمع الأعداد المختلطة

- العدد المختلط هو عدد مركب من عدد صحيح وكسر أصغر من واحد مثل :

$6\frac{2}{3}$ / $1\frac{1}{5}$ / $2\frac{3}{4}$

- نستخدم الأعداد المختلطة فى حياتنا اليومية طوال الوقت. على سبيل المثال:

Ex.: One nature trail is $2\frac{1}{2}$ kilometers long and another nature trail is $3\frac{1}{2}$ kilometers long.

- ممشى طبيعى طوله $2\frac{1}{2}$ كيلومتر وآخر طوله $3\frac{1}{2}$ كيلومتر.

- How long are the nature trails in total? $2\frac{1}{2} + 3\frac{1}{2} = ?$

- كم إجمالى طول الإثنين معاً؟

1- To add these together, add the whole numbers first: 2 + 3 = 5.

- لكى تجمع الطولين معاً، إجمع الأعداد الصحيحة أولاً.

2- Next, add the fractions together : $\frac{1}{2} + \frac{1}{2} = \frac{2}{2} = 1$

- بعد ذلك، إجمع الأعداد الكسرية معاً.

3- Add this to the whole number 5 and the total is 6.

- أجمع الناتج على العدد الصحيح 5 ويكون الإجمالى 6.

1 Circle the correct answer: ضع دائرة على الاجابة الصحيحة :

1. $2\frac{1}{5} + 3\frac{3}{5} =$ ($5\frac{4}{5}$) or $5\frac{3}{5}$	2. $3\frac{4}{6} + 5\frac{1}{6} = 8\frac{5}{6}$ or $8\frac{7}{8}$
3. $7\frac{1}{12} + 8\frac{7}{12} = 15\frac{8}{12}$ or $16\frac{1}{12}$	4. $4\frac{1}{8} + 1\frac{2}{8} = 5\frac{3}{8}$ or $5\frac{3}{16}$

2 Add the mixed numbers: إجمع الأعداد المختلطة :

1. $1\frac{1}{6} + 1\frac{4}{6} =$ - - - - - - - - - - - - - -
2. $3\frac{1}{8} + 2\frac{3}{8} =$ - - - - - - - - -

3 Answer the word problem: أجب عن المسألة الكلامية :

- Nashwa walks for $2\frac{3}{10}$ kms. She stops for a drink and then walks for another $1\frac{4}{10}$ kms. How far has Nashwa walked in total?

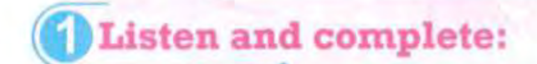
- تسير نشوى لمسافة $2\frac{3}{10}$ كيلومتر. تتوقف لتناول مشروب ثم تسير لمسافة $1\frac{4}{10}$ كيلومتر.

- كم المسافة التى تمشيها نشوى فى المجمل؟

$2\frac{3}{10}$ + - - - - - = - - - - -



Activities



1 Listen and complete: استمع وأكمل:



نص الاستماع اخر الكتاب

1. Yesterday was ....
2. Amal didn't go to ....
3. Amal saw .... singing on the tree.
4. Amal saw a brown rabbit standing ....

2 Read and match (A) with (B): اقرأ وصل:



A	B
1 The king is wearing	a. at the sun.
2 He isn't looking	b. rang.
3 The phone	c. is very stressful.
4 My dad says that work	d. very wonderful.
5 The card you gave me was	e. a big bang.
	f. a big ring.

3 Reorder the words to make correct sentences: أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

1. ride - I - bike - the - my - on - road.

----

2. heard - big - He - a - bang.

----

3. see - a - you - rabbit - brown - Can?

----

4. packed - She - suitcase - the.

----

4 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للاتى:

1- what can you see

2- i can see birds singing

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك فى التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة.

Lessons 5&6 ★ Writing

Key vocabulary



استمع إلى المفردات:







palm tree	cactus	desert snail	tamarisk plant	jerboa
النخيل	نبات الصبار	حلزون الصحراء	نبات شجرة الطرفاء	حيوان الجربوع

Other words كلمات أخرى



free	غير مشغول / حر	the movies	السينما
Sure!	بالتأكيد!	tonight	الليلة
Great.	عظيم.	corner	ناصية / ركن
environment	البيئة	café	مقهى
plan	خطة	milkshake	مخفوق الحليب
awesome	رائع	value	قيمة / أهمية
emoji	رمز تعبيرى	space	مساحة
list	قائمة	correctly	بشكل صحيح
science	العلوم	scientist	عالم

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
suggest	يقترح	suggested
include	يشمل	included
pick..up	يوصل... بالسيارة	picked..up
enjoy	يستمتع بـ	enjoyed

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
meet	يقابل	met
bring	يحضر	brought
learn	يتعلم	learnt / learned

Language Functions وظائف لغوية

1 Talking about plans التحدث عن الخطط

- للسؤال عن خطط شخص ما نستخدم العبارات الآتية:

- Are you free on the weekend?

- هل أنت غير مشغول فى عطلة نهاية الأسبوع؟

وللرد نقول:

- Yes, I'm. / I'm free. نعم، أنا كذلك / أنا غير مشغول.
- No, I'm not. / I'm busy. لا، لست كذلك / أنا مشغول.

2 Making suggestions تقديم الاقتراحات

- لتقديم الاقتراحات نستخدم الأسئلة والعبارات الآتية:

- How about / What about + v-ing......? ماذا عن ... ؟ / ما رأيك في ... ؟
- Let's + inf. .... دعنا / هيا بنا
- Should we + inf . ...? هل نفعل ...؟
- Do you want to + inf . ...? هل تريد أن ...؟

Ex.: How about / What about meeting up? -ما رأيك فى أن نتقابل؟

Ex.: Let's meet at 3. -دعنا نتقابل فى الثالثة.

Ex.: Should we pick you up at 7? هل نقلك بالسيارة فى السابعة؟

Ex.: Do you want to get a milkshake later? هل تريد تناول مخفوق الحليب فيما بعد؟

3 Responding to suggestions الرد على الاقتراحات

- للرد بالإيجاب على الاقتراحات نستخدم العبارات الآتية:

- That sounds like fun. يبدو ممتعاً.
- That sounds great / awesome. يبدو رائعًا.
- Cool! / Great! / Awesome! رائع.
- Good idea! فكرة جيدة!

Study the following

1. What should we do? ماذا يجب أن نفعل؟
2. Do you want to come? هل تود أن تأتى؟
3. How about me coming to your house? ما رأيك فى أن آتى إلى منزلك؟
4. What should I bring? ماذا علي أن أحضر؟

5. Let's meet on Friday at 4 pm. دعنا نتقابل يوم الجمعة فى الرابعة مساءًا.
6. How about going to the movies tonight? ما رأيك فى الذهاب إلى السينما الليلة؟
7. How are things? كيف تسير الأمور؟
8. See you there! أراك هناك.
9. Fareeda wants to be a scientist. فريدة تريد أن تكون عالمة.
10. Will you have a play area? هل سيكون لديكم منطقة للعب؟

1 Read the text message conversation. Answer the questions:

اقرأ الحوار في الرسالة النصية. أجب عن الأسئلة:


استمع إلى النص

Hi Malak! Are you free(1) on the weekend?

I'm good, thanks. Sure! What should we do?

My mom and dad want to do a desert hike(2). Do you want to come?

Yes, that sounds like fun!

Great, should we pick you up(3)? We don't want to go when it's too hot.

How about me coming to your house?

Good idea!

What should I bring(4)?

Hiking shoes, water, and a sweater(5).

OK!

Great! Let's meet on Friday at 4 pm?

Can't wait!




Arabic Meaning

١- غير مشغول
٢- تجول في الصحراء
٣- نوصلك بالسيارة
٤- احضر
٥- سترة



2 Complete the set phrases to use for text messages:

أكمل العبارات لاستخدامها فى الرسالة النصية :

1. How about ......going...... (go) to the movies tonight?
2. Should we ....(pick) you up at 7?
3. That ....(sound) like fun.

3 Put the sentences in order to make a text message conversation:

رتب الجمل لعمل رسالة نصية :

- Hi Wael, how are things? [1]
- At the corner café? See you there! [ ]
- Do you want to get a milkshake later? [ ]
- That sounds awesome, what time? [ ]
- Great! How are you? [2]
- About 5? Where? [ ]
- Yes, see you later! [ ]

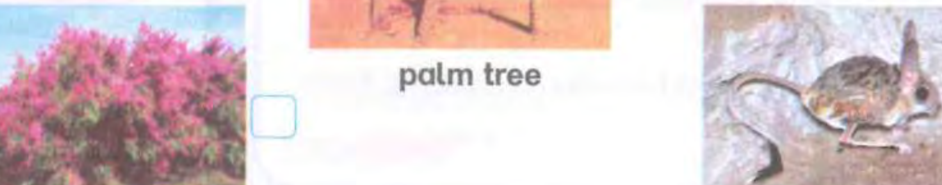
4 Check (✓) what you can see on your nature trail:

ضع علامة (✓) أمام ما يمكنك رؤيته فى ممشى طبيعى:


cactus [ ]


palm tree [ ]


desert snail [ ]


tamarisk plant [ ]

jerboa [ ]



Activities

1 Listen and complete:

استمع وأكمل:



1. I have a .... to the Red Sea.
2. I .... my suitcase carefully.
3. I am taking my .... shoes.
4. It will be a .... trip.

2 Read and match (A) with (B):

اقرأ وصل:

A	B
1 Are you free	a. is free.
2 Let's meet on	b. to be a scientist.
3 Yes, Malak	c. idea!
4 What should	d. on the weekend?
5 Fareeda wants	e. Friday
	f. I bring?

3 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

1. should - do - What - we?

----

2. cactus - can - I - see - a.

----

3. be - Fareeda - a - to - scientist - wants.

----

4. should - What - bring - I?

----

4 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للاتى:

1- do you want to come

2- i can see a tamarisk plant

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك فى التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة.



Review



Key vocabulary


leaf
ورقة شجر


city
مدينة


village
قرية


tree
شجرة


plant
نبات


grass
عشب / حشائش


hill
تل


rock
صخرة


stream
جدول / مائي مجرى


sunglasses
نظارة شمس


hiking
التجول (السير لمسافات طويلة)


hiking shoes
حذاء التجول


scarf
كوفية/وشاح


blanket
بطانية


water bottle
زجاجة مياه


hat
قبعة


warm sweater
سترة لحفظ الدفء


tent
خيمة


clothes
ملابس


snacks
وجبات خفيفة


map
خريطة


palm tree
النخيل


cactus
نبات الصبار


desert snail
حلزون الصحراء


tamarisk plant
نبات شجرة الطرفاء


jerboa
حيوان الجربوع

go on a trail	يذهب للسير في ممشى (درب)
date	تاريخ اليوم
sounds like fun	يبدو ممتعًا
fascinating	مبهر / فاتن
mountain trail	ممشى (ممر) جبلي
route	طريق / مسار

incredible	لا يصدق
show	عرض
medicine	دواء
feel better	يشعر بتحسن
suitcase	حقيبة سفر

Other words  كلمات أخرى

feeling	ملمس / إحساس
trunk	جذع / ساق (شجرة)
hike	التجول (السير لمسافات طويلة)
diver	غطاس
invitation	دعوة
tortoise	سلحفاة برية
race	سباق
runner	عدّاء
How's life?	كيف تصير الامور؟
free	غير مشغول / حر
science	العلوم
the movies	السينما
corner	ناصية / ركن
milkshake	مخفوق الحليب

long-distance	ذو مسافة طويلة
tourism project	مشروع سياحي
community	مجتمع
trading	التجارة
hunting	الصيد
century	قرن (١٠٠ عام)
hiker	رحالة / متجول
get hungry	يجوع
get thirsty	يعطش
get cold	يشعر بالبرد
fall over	يسقط
correctly	بشكل صحيح
scientist	عالم

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
climb	يتسلق	climbed
dive	يغطس	dived
accept	يقبل	accepted
invite	يدعو	invited

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
have / has	يمتلك	had
swim	يسبح	swam
sing	يغني	sang
drive	يقود (سيارة)	drove

guess يخمن	guessed	win يفوز	won
preserve يحافظ على	preserved	take يستغرق / يأخذ	took
follow يتبع (مسار)	followed	get يصبح	got
hike يتجول	hiked	meet يقابل	met
protect يحمي	protected	bring يحضر	brought
suggest يقترح	suggested		
pick..up يوصل...بالسيارة	picked..up		

Grammar قواعد لغوية

1 Singular and Plural المفرد والجمع

- تكون الأسماء الجمع من الأسماء المفردة كالآتي:

١- بإضافة **s** لآخر الاسم:

house → houses village → villages
tree → trees rock → rocks

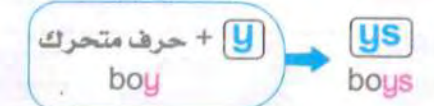
٢- بإضافة **es** لآخر الاسم إذا انتهى بالحروف الآتية:

s - ss - sh - ch -x - o

grass → grasses branch → branches

٣- بإضافة **ies** إذا انتهى الاسم بحرف **y** وكان قبله حرف ساكن حيث يحذف **y**

- أما اذا سبق حرف **y** حرف متحرك لا يحذف ويضاف **s** فقط.



y + حرف ساكن → ~~y~~ ies: city → cities
y + حرف متحرك → ys: boy → boys

٤- بإضافة **ves** لآخر الاسم اذا انتهى ب **fe / f** حيث تحذف كما يلي:

leaf → leaves

٥ - هناك أسماء شاذة لا تتبع القاعدة ولها جمع خاص بها تحفظ كما هي:

tooth → teeth mouse → mice

2 الصفات Adjectives

- تصف الصفة الاسم وتأتي قبله.

- I saw a poor man.

- تأتي الصفة بعد فعل يكون (verb to be):

Ex. The girl is lazy.

3 الظروف / الأحوال Adverbs

- تستخدم الأحوال لوصف الفعل وتوضح لنا كيف وقع الفعل.
- تتكون الأحوال بإضافة ly آخر الصفة.

Ex. This girl speaks politely.

- إذا انتهت الصفة بـ (y) تحذف ويضاف مكانها (ily) .

Ex. They play happily.

4 نهايات الكلمات -ful /-fully

Word Endings

- هناك أسماء فى اللغة الإنجليزية يضاف لها نهايات تحولها إلى صفات، من هذه النهايات (-ful) ونهايات تحولها إلى ظروف / أحوال، من هذه النهايات (-fully)

Noun الاسم		Adjective الصفة		Adverb الظرف/الحال	
beauty	الجمال	beautiful	جميل	beautifully	بشكل جميل
help	المساعدة	helpful	متعاون / مفيد	helpfully	بشكل مساعد
care	العناية / الحرص	careful	حريص	carefully	بحرص / بعناية
thought	فكرة	thoughtful	عميق التفكير	thoughtfully	بتفكر
stress	الإجهاد	stressful	مجهد	stressfully	بإجهاد

لاحظ: حذف حرف (y) وتحويله إلى (i) عند إضافة النهايات -ful / -fully للاسم beauty

Pronunciation



The sound /n/ and the sound /ŋ/

-يتشابه الصوتان فى الشكل ولكنهما ينطقا بشكل مختلف.



/n/

nose أنف sun الشمس know يعرف natural طبيعي ton طن



/ŋ/

hiking التجول tongue اللسان bang صوت فرقعة
finger أصبع ring خاتم / يرن rang رن king ملك



مهارات الكتابة

Write a paragraph of Forty (40) words

Answers to Paragraphs

Lesson 3

The Red Sea Mountain Trail

1. The Red Sea Mountain Trail is near Hurghada. It's a long - distance hiking trail. It is a community tourism project. I am going there next week. I'm taking hiking shoes, some snacks, a hat and sunglasses.



Activity Unit 11

"A trip to the Red Sea"

2. Our school had a trip to the Red Sea last week. My friends and I went on the trip. I took my new camera with me. We took wonderful photos there. My friend Shady brought his beach ball. We swam and played in the water. It was a nice trip.



Al Azhar Exercises الأسئلة الخاصة بالأزهر الشريف



A- Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, or c: استمع وأختر:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب

1. Egypt has some famous .... Cairo, Alexandria and Hurghada. (towns - villages - cities)
2. The weather in Hurghada is .... (cold - warm - hot)

B. Language Functions

2 Read and complete the dialog with the words below: اقرأ وأكمل:

trail - last - do

A : Where did you go ------------------------------ weekend?
B : I went to Wadi Degla. ------------------------------.
A : What did you ------------------------------ there?
B : I went on a ------------------------------.

C- Reading Comprehension

3 Read and choose the correct answer: اقرأ واختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

I'm Hussein. I'm in primary five. My father is a teacher. My mother is a doctor. I'm happy because my father always gives me presents. Last month, we went to the Red Sea. We visited the Red Sea Mountain Trail. It is the first long - distance hiking to open in Egypt. It is a community tourism project. It's a wonderful place.

1. Hussein is in primary .... (five - three - four)
2. Hussein's father is a .... (vet - teacher - doctor)
3. Last month, they went to .... (Aswan - Alexandria - the Red Sea)
4. They visited the Red Sea ....Trail. (park - Mountain - garden)
5. It's a .... place. (wonderful - bad - noisy)

D. Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة

1. I saw a .... bird on the tree.
   a wonder   b wonderful   c wonderfully
2. He heard a big ....
   a rang   b sang   c bang
3. The Red Sea Mountain Trail is very exciting and ....
   a beauty   b beautifully   c beautiful
4. Wadi Degla is cool because you can see a lot of ....
   a animals   b skies   c clothes
5. A .... is a very tall plant with branches.
   a river   b tree   c lake

E. The Reader

5 Choose the correct answer : اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. The things in the rocks look like ....
   a bones   b shoes   c trees
2. Uncle Youssef looks at Ramy's rocks ....
   a badly   b sadly   c carefully

F. Writing

6 Write a short paragraph of Four (4) sentences about: اكتب فقرة إنشائية من ٤ جمل عن:

The nature trail trip





Activity ON UNIT 11

1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False): استمع واكتب (صواب) أو (خطأ):

نص الاستماع اخر الكتاب

1. Amira is going to Hurghada. ( )
2. Ola is going to Alexandria. ( )
3. Amira wants to go on a trip with her friends. ( )
4. Amira is taking some drinks. ( )

2 Listen and complete: استمع واكمل:

نص الاستماع اخر الكتاب

1. Omar is a .... boy.
2. Omar is a good ....
3. His dad always tells him to be ....
4. Omar won a swimming .... last year.

3 Read and match: اقرأ وصل:

A	B
1 I love the feeling	a. quickly and swim well.
2 What should	b. later!
3 I know you walk	c. of green grass.
4 See you	d. after the trail?
5 Who looks	e. they going?
	f. I do?

4 Read the text and answer the questions: إقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

Every week, Tarek and his family go to the beach. They live far from the beach. Tarek's mother says, "It's fun in the beach, but it takes too much time to get there and back!"

Tarek and his sister and brother are very sad. They want to go to the beach. One day Tarek's **parents** come to talk with the kids. They say, "We need to live near the beach!" Tarek and his sister and brother are very happy! Now they live near the beach. They go to the beach every day!

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك ان يتعامل مع هذه الأسئلة

Unit 11 Getting out in the fresh air

A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Tarek and his family go to the beach every ....
   a) year b) week c) month d) day
2. The word "**parents**" means ....
   a) brother and sister b) uncle and aunt
   c) father and mother d) grandparents

B- Answer the following questions:

3. How many persons are there in Tarek's family?

----

4. Why are the kids happy?

----

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

1. dad - swimmer - good - a - Is - your?

----

2. beautifully - girl - This - sings.

----

3. on - meet - at - Friday - 4 pm - Let's.

----

4. things - How - are?

----

6 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للاتى:

1. i want to go on a trail

----

2. when are they meeting

----

7 Write a paragraph of Forty (40) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من ٤٠ كلمة عن:

مجاب آخر الوحدة

"A trip to the Red Sea"

beach - swim

Theme 4

Being responsible

Unit 12

Vacations

العطلات

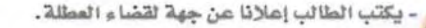






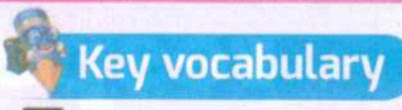
Objectives of the Unit أهداف الوحدة

1. Listen, read, research, and write about vacations
   - يستمع الطالب ويقرأ ويجري بحثا ويكتب عن العطلات.
2. Think about environmental responsibility.
   - يفكر الطالب في المسئولية البيئية.
3. Learn about natural and man-made resources.
   - يتعلم الطالب عن الموارد عن الطبيعية والموارد التي من صنع الإنسان.
4. Practice using prepositions of time.
   - يتدرب الطالب على استخدام حروف الجر الخاصة بالوقت.
5. Listen to a conversation. - يستمع الطالب إلى محادثة.
6. Learn about different types of triangles.
   - يتعلم الطالب عن الأنواع المختلفة من المثلثات.
7. Read and say words with the "th" sound.
   - يقرأ الطالب ويقول كلمات بها صوت th.
8. Think about my perfect vacation. - يفكر الطالب في عطلة مثالية.
9. Write a diary entry for my best day on vacation.
   - يكتب الطالب تدوينة يومية عن أفضل يوم في العطلة.
10. Write an ad for a vacation destination.
    - يكتب الطالب إعلانا عن جهة لقضاء العطلة.

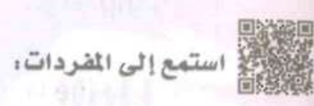








Lesson 1 A world trip

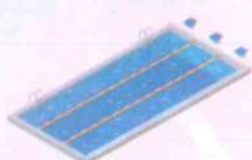


Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات:


hotel
فندق


suitcase
حقيبة سفر


swimming pool
حمام سباحة


high-rise building
ناطحة سحاب


theme park
ملاهي


ticket
تذكرة


beach
شاطيء


camera
كاميرا


city
مدينة


museum
متحف


airport
مطار


sunglasses
نظارة شمس


tourist
سائح


passport
جواز سفر



Other words كلمات أخرى

luckily	لحسن الحظ
Singapore	سنغافورة
flight	رحلة جوية
vacation	إجازة / عطلة
footprints	آثار القدم
daughter	ابنة
husband	زوج
gardens	منطقة حدائق

aloud	بصوت عال
degree	درجة الحرارة
view	منظر
island	جزيرة
son	ابن
floor	طابق / دور في مبنى
vanilla	فانيليا



Important Phrases عبارات مهمة

a business trip	رحلة عمل
a boat trip	رحلة (نزهة) بالقارب
from all around the world	من جميع أنحاء العالم

in the middle of	في منتصف
by the Bay	بجوار الخليج
a really special place	مكان مميز جدا

Adjectives الصفات

wonderful / lovely	رائع
comfortable	مريح

busy	مزدحم
huge	ضخم

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماض
arrive	يصل	arrived
visit	يزور	visited
relax	يستريح	relaxed
pack	يحزم (حقائب)	packed

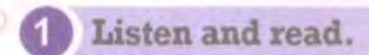
Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماض
spend	يقضي (وقت)	spent
fly	يطير / يسافر جوا	flew
take photos	يلتقط صور	took photos
leave	يغادر	left
sleep	ينام	slept



Study the following

1. They are on a business trip traveling around the world.
   - إنهم مسافرون حول العالم في رحلة عمل.
2. Luckily, we've got a lovely hotel room.
   - لحسن الحظ حصلنا على غرفة رائعة في فندق.
3. The view is beautiful and we can see the beach.
   - المنظر جميل ويمكننا أن نرى الشاطىء.
4. There's a huge swimming pool on the roof of the hotel!
   - يوجد حمام سباحة ضخم على سطح الفندق.
5. It didn't take long to get through the airport when we arrived.
   - لم نستغرق الكثير من الوقت لكي نمر من المطار عندما وصلنا.
6. We got our suitcases straight away.
   - حصلنا على حقائب السفر فورًا.
7. There are lots of high-rise buildings.
   - يوجد الكثير من ناطحات السحاب.
8. There are many parks, gardens, and trees to sit under and relax.
   - يوجد الكثير من الحدائق والأشجار لكي نجلس تحتها ونستريح.
9. We visited the museum of ice cream!
   - زرنا متحف المثلجات.
10. I hope you are all well.
    - اتمنى أن تكونوا جميعًا بخير.
11. Now I have to find our tickets and passports and pack our suitcases again!
    - الآن يجب أن أجد تذاكري وجواز سفري وأحزم حقائبي مرة أخرى.



Unit 12 Vacations

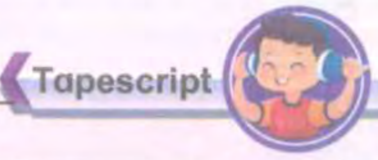
1 Listen and read. استمع واقرأ:



Singapore City

Where are Uncle Hany and Aunt Nadia now?

Today Mom received an email from her sister Nadia, and her husband Hany.They are on a business trip traveling around the world. Nadia and Hany were in India last week, and this week they are in Singapore. Mom is reading the email aloud to her daughter Rana and her son Ali.



Tapescript نص الاستماع استمع إلى النص:



From: Nadiax@mail.com Subject: My trip

To: Samiax@mail.com

Dear Samia,

Hello to you all from Singapore[1]! It's hot here - about 36 degrees[2]. Luckily, we've got a lovely hotel[3] room. We're on the 42nd floor. The view is beautiful and we can see the beach. There's a huge swimming pool[4] on the roof of the hotel! Can you believe it? The flight[5] from India took about six hours, but it was comfortable[6] and we both slept. It didn't take long to get through[7] the airport when we arrived - we got our suitcases[8] straight away.

Singapore is a wonderful city.There are lots of high-rise buildings [9], but there are also many parks, gardens, and trees to sit under and relax. The Gardens by the Bay [10] is a really special place where there are flowers and plants from all around the world. We spent a lot of time there. You really forget that you're in the middle[11] of a busy city.

Yesterday, we went on a boat trip with some other tourists to an island. There is a theme park[12]. It was so much fun! After that, we visited the museum[13] of ice cream! I had a 'Queen Bee' ice cream which is vanilla and honey with chocolate. It was great!

I hope you are all well. We will fly to Japan [14] tomorrow and I'll send you another email when we arrive. Now I have to find our tickets[15] and passports[16] and pack[17] our suitcases again!

Love, Nadia

Arabic Meaning

١- دولة سنغافورة
٢- درجات حرارة
٣- فندق
٤- حمام سباحة
٥- رحلة جوية
٦- مريح
٧- يمر عبر
٨- حقائب سفر
٩- ناطحات سحاب
١٠- خليج
١١- فى منتصف
١٢- ملاهى
١٣- متحف
١٤- دولة اليابان
١٥- تذاكر
١٦- جوازات سفر
١٧- يحزم (حقائب)

2 Listen again. Check (✓) the places that Nadia and Hany visited in Singapore.

استمع مرة أخرى. ضع علامة (✓) أمام الأماكن التى زارتها نادية وهاني فى سنغافورة.

1- a swimming pool ☐ 2- an airport ☐
3- a theme park ☐ 4- an ice cream museum ☐
5- a zoo ☐ 6- a park ☐

3 Read again. Decide if the sentences are True (T) or False (F). Correct the false sentences in your notebook:

اقرأ مرة أخرى. حدد إن كانت الجمل صحيحة أم خاطئة. صحح الجمل الخاطئة فى كراستك:

1- Nadia and Hany are staying at a friend's house. ☐
2- They flew from Cairo. ☐
3- They thought the Gardens by the Bay was lovely. ☐
4- Yesterday they went to a museum. ☐

4 Listen and say. Then write:

استمع وقل. ثم اكتب:

hotel - passport - swimming pool - suitcase - ticket - tourist

1 ticket
2 ....
3 ....
4 ....
5 ....
6 ....

5 Read. Are these things you take on vacation, or places you go on vacation? Write them on the correct list:

اقرأ. هل هذه الأشياء التى تأخذها معك فى إجازة؟ أم هى أماكن تذهب إليها فى إجازة؟ اكتبهم فى المكان الصحيح:

beach - camera - city - hotel - museum - passport - suitcase - sunglasses swimming pool - theme park - ticket

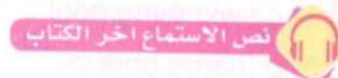
Things you take on vacation أشياء تأخذها معك فى إجازة	Places you go on vacation أماكن تذهب إليها فى إجازة
- suitcase	- beach



Activities

1 Listen and complete:

استمع وأكمل:



1- Osama .... to Dubai last month.

2- There are many .... buildings.

3- There was a big .... pool on the roof of the hotel.

4- Osama went on rides at the theme ....

2 Read and match (A) with (B):

اقرأ وصل:



A	B
1 We got our suitcases	a. museum of ice cream!
2 The view is beautiful and	b. of high-rise buildings.
3 We visited the	c. we can see the beach.
4 Luckily, we've got	d. straight away at the airport.
5 There are lots	e. a lovely hotel room.
	f. Japan.

3 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

1. you - well - I - are - all - hope.

----

2. our tickets - have to - and - I - find - passports.

----

3. a boat - went - trip - We - on.

----

4. you - Can - it - believe?

----

4 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

1. do Muhammad and mustafa go to Singapore?

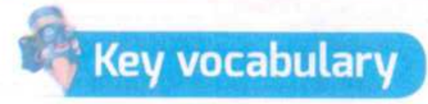
----

2. we will fly to Japan tomorrow

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك فى التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة.



Lesson 2 CLIL: Science



استمع إلى المفردات:


gold الذهب


water ماء

sunlight ضوء الشمس




sand رمل

Natural resources موارد طبيعية


the Nile نهر النيل


fruit فاكهة


reeds نبات القصب


sun الشمس

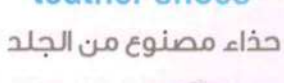

crops محاصيل


stone حجر


grain حبوب


bicycle دراجة

Man-made resources موارد من صنع الإنسان


leather shoes حذاء مصنوع من الجلد


bread خبز


plastic plates أطباق بلاستيك


galabeya جلابية


basket سلة



tea شاي

Other words كلمات أخرى

nature	الطبيعة	humans	البشر
banks	ضفاف	material	مادة خام
fertile	خصب	lucky	محظوظ

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
boil	يغلي	boiled
harvest	يحصد	harvested

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
wake up	يستيقظ	woke up
put on	يرتدي	put on
sell	يبيع	sold
shine	تسطع (الشمس)	shone

Study the following

1. Trees and stone, are examples of natural resources.
   - الشجر والحجارة هي أمثلة على الموارد الطبيعية.
2. Plastic bottles and cotton clothes are examples of man-made resources.
   - الزجاجات البلاستيكية والملابس القطنية هي أمثلة على موارد من صنع الإنسان.
3. He wakes up and puts on his galabeya and leather shoes.
   - يستيقظ ويرتدي الجلابية والحذاء المصنوع من الجلد.
4. He boils some water for tea. - يغلي بعض الماء من أجل الشاي.
5. The sun will shine most days. - ستكون الشمس ساطعة معظم الأيام.
6. He lives on the fertile banks of the Nile. - يسكن على ضفاف النيل الخصبة.
7. He can use the water for his crops. - يستطيع استخدام الماء من أجل محاصيله.
8. Today, Farouk is harvesting the grain. - يحصد فاروق الحبوب اليوم.
9. Reem is going on vacation. - ستذهب ريم فى إجازة.
10. She is packing her suitace. - هى تحزم حقيبة السفر الخاصة بها.

Definitions تعريفات

- **Natural resources** موارد طبيعية: are materials or things we can find in nature.
- **Man-made resources** موارد من صنع الإنسان: are materials or things that humans have made.

1 Read. Then look at the resources. Are they natural (N) or man-made (M)?

اقرأ ثم انظر إلى الموارد . هل هى طبيعية أم من صنع الإنسان؟

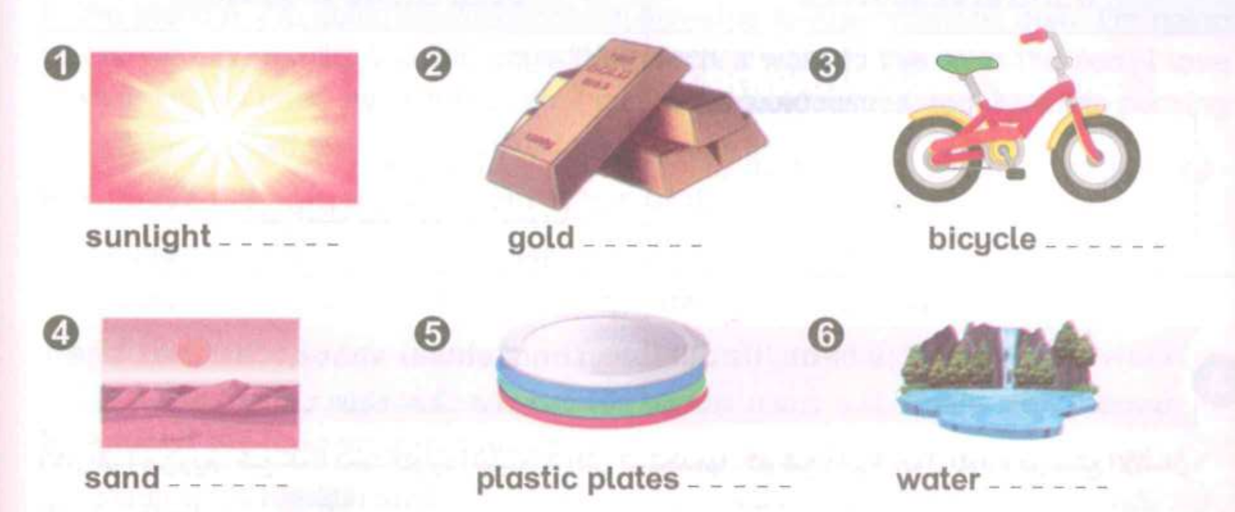
Resources

Natural resources are materials or things we can find in nature. Trees and stone are examples of natural resources.

Man-made resources are materials or things that humans have made. Plastic bottles and cotton clothes are examples of man-made resources.





1. sunlight ------
2. gold ------
3. bicycle ------
4. sand ------
5. plastic plates -----
6. water ------

2 Think. Write one more natural resource and one more man-made resource:

فكر. اكتب موردًا طبيعيًا آخر وموردًا من صنع الإنسان.

Natural: --

Man-made: --

3 Read about Farouk. The underlined words are all resources. Put them into the correct column in the table below:

اقرأ عن فاروق. الكلمات التي تحتها خط كلها موارد . ضعهم في العمود الصحيح في الجدول بالأسفل:

استمع إلى النص:

Farouk is a farmer in Aswan. Every morning, he wakes up and puts on his galabeya and leather shoes. He boils some water for tea and eats some bread and fruit.

Because Farouk lives in Aswan, he knows that the sun will shine most days. He is lucky that he lives on the fertile banks of the Nile so that he can use the water for his crops.

Today, Farouk is harvesting the grain, putting it into baskets made from reeds, and taking it to sell at the market.

Natural resources	Man-made resources
	galabeya

4 Now read about Reem. Underline the natural resources that she uses. Then circle the man-made resources that she uses:

الآن اقرأ عن ريم. ضع خطًا تحت الموارد الطبيعية التي تستخدمها. ثم ضع دائرة حول الموارد من صنع الإنسان التي تستخدمها:

استمع إلى النص:

Reem is going on vacation(1). She is traveling to Canada by plane.

Today, he is packing(2) her suitcase. She knows that there is often rain in Canada, so she is taking her umbrella. It can also be cold there, so she is packing a sweater.

Reem loves swimming and asked her friend in Canada if there was a place(3) she could swim. Her friend said she didn't live near the sea, but she could swim in a river or a lake if she wanted to.



Arabic Meaning

١- أجازة
٢- تحزم (حقائب)
٣- مكان



Activities

1 Read and match (A) with (B):

اقرأ وصل:

A

1. She is traveling to
2. Natural resources are
3. There is often rain in Canada
4. The sun will
5. Cotton clothes are examples

B

a. of man-made resources.
b. Canada by plane.
c. shine most days.
d. materials or things we can find in nature.
e. so she is taking her umbrella.
f. of natural resources.

2 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

I'm Mariam. I'm going on vacation. I'm traveling to Alexandria by train. I'm going there with my family. We will go to the beach. I want to live near the sea. I love swimming, so I can swim in the sea. I can make sandcastles, too. Now I'm packing my things to go there. I think we will have a nice time.

A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Mariam is going to Alexandria by ....
   a car b plane c train d bus
2. They will go to the ....
   a school b beach c library d airport

B- Answer the following questions:

3. What does Mariam love? ------------------------
4. What can Mariam make? ------------------------

3 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

1. the Nile - lives - on - Moaaz. ------------------------
2. Canada - is - plane - She - by - traveling to. ------------------------
3. for tea - water - boils - He - some. ------------------------
4. natural - examples of - Trees - resources - are. ------------------------

4 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1- amr is harvesting his crops ------------------------
2- is Reem packing her suitcase ------------------------

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك في التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة.



Lesson 3 A special trip



Key vocabulary



استمع إلى المفردات:

check in	يسجل وصوله للفندق	diary entry	تدوينة فى المفكرة اليومية
traditional	تقليدي	wander	يتجول
daytrip	رحلة نهارية (فى النهار)	handicrafts / crafts	مصنوعات يدوية
diary	مفكرة يومية	stalls	أكشاك

Other words كلمات أخرى

leaflet	منشور / كراسة دعائية	meeting	مقابلة
tour	جولة	skin	جلد
mud	وحل / طين	chance	فرصة
exploring	استكشاف	destination	جهة الوصول
culture	حضارة / ثقافة	midnight	منتصف الليل
trading center	مركز تجاري	tour guide	مرشد سياحي
rug	سجادة	archaeological	أثري
on the way	في الطريق	arts and crafts	فنون وحرف
idea	فكرة	museum	متحف
home	وطن	Jordan	الأردن
citadel	قلعة	Jordanian	اردنى
The Roman Amphitheater	المدرج الرومانى	the Dead Sea	البحر الميت

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضِ
check in	يصل للفندق	checked in
head out	يتوجه إلى	headed out
float	يطفو	floated
walk around	يتجول في	walked around
discover	يكتشف	discovered

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضِ
buy	يشتري	bought
drive	يقود (سيارة)	drove
write down	يسجل / يدون	wrote down
go back	يعود	went back

Study the following

1. **Enjoy some free time in the city.**
- استمتع ببعض وقت الفراغ في المدينة.

2. **Today we enjoy a tour of Amman.**
- اليوم نستمتع بجولة في عمان.

3. **Today we head out of the city for a daytrip.**
- اليوم نتوجه إلى خارج المدينة في رحلة نهارية.

4. **You will find lots of local Jordanian culture.**
- ستجد الكثير من الثقافة الأردنية المحلية.

5. **No visit to Jordan is complete without a trip to the Dead Sea.**
- لا تكتمل زيارة الأردن بدون رحلة إلى البحر الميت.

6. **There is so much salt in this sea.**
- يوجد الكثير جدا من الملح في هذا البحر.

7. **We leave at 11 am to drive three hours back to Amman.**
- نغادر الساعة ١١ صباحا لنقود سيارة لمدة ٣ ساعات عائدين إلى عمان.

8. **We will stop on the way for lunch.**
- سنتوقف في الطريق للغداء.

9. **It only took an hour to reach our destination.**
- استغرقت ساعة فقط للوصول لوجهتنا.

10. **Several people bought traditional Jordanian handicrafts from the stalls.**
- اشترى الكثير من الناس مصنوعات يدوية اردنية تقليدية من الأكشاك.

11. **Today was the best day ever!**
- كان اليوم افضل يوم على الاطلاق.

12. **We had the chance to wander through the streets.**
- اتيحت لنا الفرصة وتجولنا خلال الشوارع.

13. **There is so much salt in the sea that you are able to float on the water.**
- يوجد ملح كثير جدًا فى البحر يمكنك من الطفو على الماء.



Definitions تعريفات

A diary	مفكرة يومية	is a book in which you write down things that happen to you each day.
A diary entry	تدوينة فى المفكرة	is a piece of writing in a diary.

Grammar قواعد لغوية

Prepositions of time حروف الجر الخاصة بالوقت



◉ نستخدم حرف الجر on قبل أيام الأسبوع والمناسبات الخاصة والتواريخ المحددة:

- I go swimming on Mondays.
- I am having a party on my birthday.
- I was born on July 6th, 2010.



◉ نستخدم حرف الجر at قبل الوقت وبعض العبارات:

- Our flight lands at 8 pm.
- We play basketball at lunchtime / at night.
- at midnight

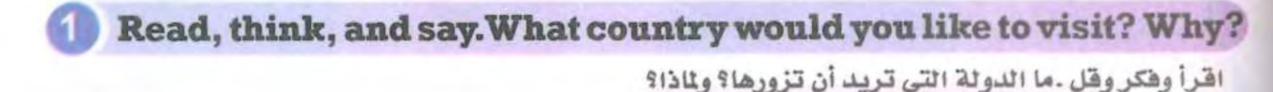


◉ نستخدم حرف الجر in قبل الشهور وفصول السنة والسنوات وأيضا أوقات اليوم:

- We visit our cousins in June.
- I was born in 2010.
- They arrived in the morning.
- in the afternoon / evening

◉ لاحظ إذا جاء رقم بعد الشهر نستخدم on لأن هنا نقصد اليوم:

- My birthday is on October 11th.



1 Read, think, and say. What country would you like to visit? Why?

اقرأ وفكر وقل .ما الدولة التي تريد أن تزورها؟ ولماذا؟

I would like to visit Zambia because I want to see elephants and lions.





استمع إلى النص:

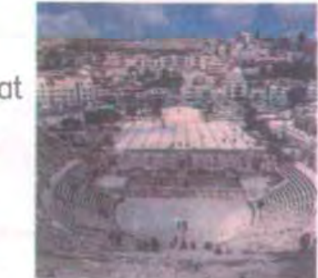


Tapescript نص الاستماع

2 Listen and read the leaflet. How many museums can you visit on this trip?

استمع وأقرأ المنشور. كم عدد المتاحف التي يمكنك زيارتها في هذه الرحلة؟

DESERT TOURS TRIP TO JORDAN October 4-8



Day 1: Arrive in Amman and check in[1] to our hotel in the middle of the city. Enjoy some free time in the city before meeting at the Memphis restaurant for a traditional[2] Jordanian dinner in the evening.

Day 2: Today we enjoy a tour of Amman. Visit the famous Amman Citadel[3] before exploring the Roman Amphitheater[4] and the Archaeological Museum[5]. After a late lunch in a local restaurant, spend the afternoon and evening walking through Amman's many colorful markets[6].

Day 3: Today we head out of the city for a daytrip[7] to As-Salt[8]. About an hour away from Amman, in the ancient town of As-Salt you will find lots of local Jordanian culture. The markets are wonderful and there are many traditional arts and crafts[9] to buy. We will visit the Abu Jaber Museum and discover[10] the history[11] of As-Salt as Jordan's important trading center[12].

Day 4: No visit to Jordan is complete[13] without a trip to the Dead Sea[14]. There is so much salt in this sea that you are able to float on the water! You can also enjoy the Dead Sea mud[15], which is very good for your skin.

Day 5: After enjoying a relaxed breakfast, we leave at 11am to drive three hours back to Amman. We will stop on the way for lunch before arriving at the airport[16] at 5 pm.

Arabic Meaning
١- يسجل وصول فندق
٢- تقليدي
٣- قلعة عمان
٤- المدرج الروماني
٥- المتحف الأثري
٦- أسواق
٧- رحلة نهارية
٨- مدينة السلط (الأردن)
٩- فنون وحرف
١٠- يكتشف
١١- تاريخ
١٢- مركز تجاري
١٣- مكتمل
١٤- البحر الميت
١٥- طين
١٦- مطار

3 Read again and decide if the sentences are True (T) or False (F):

اقرأ مرة أخرى وحدد إذا كانت الجمل صحيحة أم خاطئة :

1- On the first day, you can see the Roman Amphitheater. ☐
2- You visit As-Salt before you visit the Dead Sea. ☐
3- The Abu Jaber Museum is in Jordan's capital city. ☐
4- The markets in As-Salt sell traditional arts and crafts. ☐
5- The Dead Sea mud is bad for your skin. ☐
6- You arrive at the airport on day 5, at 5 am. ☐

4 Read Nahla's diary entry. Which day is she describing? How do you know?

اقرأ تدوينة نهلة اليومية. أي يوم تصف؟ كيف تعرف؟

استمع إلى النص

Thursday, October 6th

Dear Diary,

Today was the best day ever![1] I love anything[2] to do with history- I always go to the museum at home, so today was a special[3] day for me. The bus ride[4] wasn't too bad. It only took an hour to reach[5] our destination[6]. I listened to music on the way and the time went quite[7] quickly. When we arrived, we had the chance to wander through[8] the streets and several[9] people bought traditional Jordanian handicrafts[10] from the stalls[11]. I bought a lovely colorful rug[12]. Saleh (our tour guide[13]) was very kind and took it to the bus for me so that I didn't have to carry it around! That was lucky because I spent hours in the museum!

Arabic Meaning

١- على الاطلاق
٢- أي شئ
٣- مميز
٤- جولة بالأتوبيس
٥- يصل إلى
٦- جهة الوصول
٧- إلى حد ما
٨- يتجول عبر
٩- عديد
١٠- مصنوعات يدوية
١١- أكشاك
١٢- سجادة
١٣- مرشد سياحي

5 Complete the sentences with at, on, or in:

أكمل الجمل بـ at / on / in.

1- Dad is a baker. He works ---------------- the mornings.
2- We go to the club -------------------------- Saturdays.
3- Does our next class start ---------------- 2 pm?
4- Grandma was born -------------------- 1962.
5- Reem's birthday is ---------------- December 4th.

6 Complete the paragraph with at, on, or in:

أكمل الفقرة بـ at / on / in:

❶ .... Monday, we arrived in Amman. The flight landed ❷ .... 4 o'clock ❸ .... the afternoon. It was about 26 degrees and I was surprised that it was so warm ❹ .... October. We went to our hotel and checked in. Our room was very comfortable. Later that evening, we had dinner at the Memphis restaurant in the city center. Amman is a really busy city ❺ .... night. We walked around the markets and bought some traditional handicrafts. We went back to our hotel ❻ .... about midnight.

7 Listen. Match the times with the speakers and activities:

استمع. وصل الأوقات مع المتحدثين وأنشطتهم :

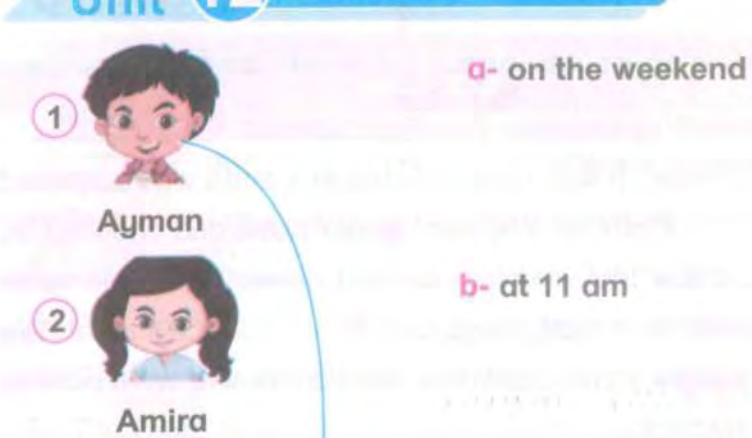


استمع إلى النص

Tapescript نص الاستماع

Narrator : 1
Boy 1 : Hi Ayman, do you want to play basketball after school on Thursday?
Ayman : On Thursday? I'm sorry, I can't, I go swimming on Thursdays.
Narrator : 2
Girl 1 : Hello Amira, shall we go shopping on the weekend?
Amira : Yes please, that sounds good!
Narrator : 3
Dad : Fareed, remember you have a dentist's appointment this afternoon.
Fareed : Oh yes, it's at five o'clock, isn't it?
Dad : Yes, that's right.
Fareed : Ok, thanks Dad .
Narrator : 4
Mom : Talia, our flight leaves at 11 am.
Talia : OK, Mom, I'll be ready.
Narrator : 5
Sherif : Mom, remember I'm playing football with Ramy in the morning.
Mom : Oh, yes, that's fine, Sherif. Thanks for reminding me.
Narrator : 6
Sara : Mom, when are we visiting Grandma and Grandpa?
Mom : We're going in July, Sara. Not long now.





1 Ayman

a- on the weekend





2 Amira

b- at 11 am



3 Fareed

c- in the morning





4 Talia

d- on Thursday



5 Sherif

e- in July



6 Sara

f- at 5 pm

8 Tell your partner what you do at these times, then write. Use on, in, or at:

قل لزميلك ماذا تفعل فى هذه الأوقات ثم اكتب بأستخدم **at / on / in**:

1- Wednesdays On Wednesdays, I play football after school.

2- the afternoon ....

3- summer ....

4- weekend ....

5- January ....

6- 6 pm ....



Activities

1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False): استمع واكتب (صواب) أو (خطأ):

استمع إلى النص آخر الكتاب

	True	False
1 Tourists visit many places in Egypt every year.		
2 They always want to check in to a bad hotel.		
3 They try traditional Egyptian food.		
4 They like to go to Luxor and Aswan in summer.		

2 Read and match (A) with (B): اقرأ وصل:

A	B
1 A diary entry is	a. local Jordanian culture.
2 My grandpa was	b. of the city for a daytrip.
3 You will find lots of	c. 11 am.
4 Mr Roshdi leaves his office at	d. born in 1950
5 We head out	e. in the evening.
	f. a piece of writing in a diary.

3 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

1. stop - for lunch - We - on the way - will.

....

2. visit - you - would - like to - What?

....

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك فى التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة.

3. salt - is - the Dead Sea - There - in - so much.

....

4. football - Ali - Mondays - on - plays.

....

4 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. i spent hours in the park

....

2. how many museums can you visit on this trip

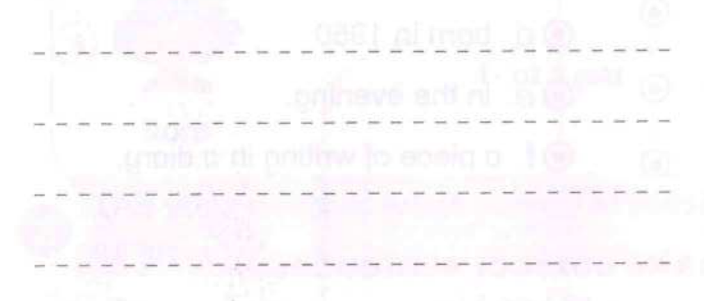
....

5 Write a paragraph of Forty (40) words using the following guiding elements: اكتب فقرة إنشائية من ٤٠ كلمة عن:



What you do at different times

weekend - Thursday - summer





....

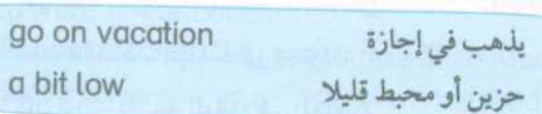
....

....

....



Al-Azhar Park



Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات:

go on vacation	يذهب في إجازة	bench	مقعد طويل
a bit low	حزين أو محبط قليلا	awesome	مذهل

Other words كلمات أخرى



picnic	طعام مخصص للنزهة / نزهة	cousin	ابن - ابنة (العم-العمة / الخال-الخالة)
suddenly	فجأة	past	ماراً بـ/ عابراً
playground	ملعب	grass	عشب / حشائش
together	معًا / سوياً	meal	وجبة
show	عرض (مسرحي)	beach	شاطىء
year	عام / سنة	whole group	مجموعة كاملة
else	آخر / اضافي		

Adjectives صفات



possible	ممكن	cool	لطيف / بارد
interesting	ممتع / شيق	wonderful	مدهش
beautiful	جميل	fantastic	رائع

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
phone	يتصل تليفونيًا	phoned
agree	يوافق	agreed
shout	يصيح	shouted
arrive	يصل	arrived
seem	يبدو	seemed

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
come	يأتي	came
sit	يجلس	sat
find	يجد	found
think	يعتقد	thought
know	يعرف	knew

Study the following

1. It was a hot summer. - كان صيفًا حارًا.
2. School was over and he wanted to go on vacation. - الدراسة انتهت وأراد (سليم) أن يذهب في إجازة.
3. His cousin Sherif was away at the beach. - ابن عمه شريف كان بعيدًا بالشاطئ.
4. His family usually went on vacation. - عادة ما تذهب عائلته في إجازة.
5. They had to stay in Cairo. - كان يجب عليهم البقاء في القاهرة.
6. I'm feeling a bit low. - أشعر بالحزن قليلا.
7. I want to be at the beach. - أريد أن أكون على الشاطيء.
8. Can you come to the playground with us? - هل من الممكن أن تأتي معنا إلى الملعب؟
9. Why are you in the city? -لماذا أنت في المدينة؟
10. Mom sat on a bench and enjoyed all the beautiful plants and birds in the park. - جلست أمي على مقعد واستمتعت بكل النباتات والطيور الجميلة في المتنزه.
11. I think this is a fantastic place. - أعتقد أن هذا مكان رائع.
12. I can see there's a show next week. -أستطيع أن أرى أن هناك عرضا الأسبوع القادم.
13. It seemed that summer in the city would be awesome! - بدا أن ذلك الصيف في المدينة كان رائعًا.

1 Listen and read the story. Why did Seleem feel better at the end of the story?

استمع وأقرأ القصة. لماذا شعر سليم بأنه آخر القصة؟

استمع إلى النص:

Tapescript نص الاستماع



Seleem was feeling sad. It was a hot summer, school was over and he wanted to go on vacation[1]. His cousin Sherif was away at the beach and Seleem wanted to be there too. His family usually went on vacation with Sherif's family, but this year that wasn't possible[2] - Seleem's dad had a new job and they had to stay[3] in Cairo. Marwan, his friend, phoned him, "Hey, how are you, Seleem?" "I'm feeling a bit low[4] - I want to be at the beach," said Seleem. "Well, this year you can't go, so let's find something else to do!" said Marwan. "I know, let's go to Al-Azhar Park."

Arabic Meaning

١- يذهب في إجازة
٢- ممكن
٣- يقيم/يبقى
٤- حزين قليلا

"Hmm," said Seleem. "I don't know it, but it sounds[5] interesting!" Seleem's mom agreed[6] to take them to the park. She made a picnic[7], so when they arrived, they sat under a big tree on the cool green grass[8] and enjoyed their food. It was such a beautiful day, and Marwan and Seleem played football. Suddenly Ramy and Maged, their friends from school, came running past.
"Hi Ramy!" shouted Seleem. "Why are you in the city? I thought[9] you were at the beach!"
"No," said Ramy. "My grandma's ill so Mom wanted to stay in Cairo. There's a whole group[10] of us who stayed at home and didn't travel. Can you come to the playground[11] with us?" Seleem asked his mom and they all went together[12] to the playground. Mom sat on a bench[13] and enjoyed all the beautiful plants and birds in the park.
"I think this is a fantastic place," said Mom at the end of the afternoon.
"I can see there's a show next week. Let's come back[14] with Dad, see the show, and have a meal[15] at the restaurant." Seleem felt very happy - now he knew his friends were in town and they had a wonderful park. It seemed[16] that summer in the city would be awesome[17]!

٥- يبدو
٦- وافق
٧- طعام النزهة
٨- عشب
٩- اعتقد
١٠- مجموعة كاملة
١١- ملعب/فناء
١٢- معًا
١٣- مقعد طويل
١٤- يعود
١٥- وجبة
١٦- بدا
١٧- مذهل

2 Read again and circle the correct answer:

اقرأ مرة اخرى وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

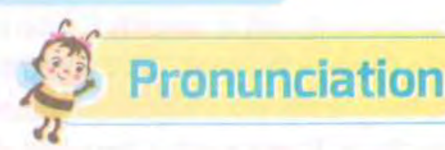
1- Seleem wasn't at school because
 a he was ill.   b he was on vacation.
2- Why did Seleem not go to the beach?
 a Because his grandma was ill.   b Because his dad had a new job.
3- Where did they eat in the park?
 a on the grass   b at the restaurant
4- Who did Seleem and Marwan meet at the park?
 a friends from school   b Sherif, Seleem's cousin
5- What did Seleem and his mom decide to do the following week?
 a come back with Seleem's friends   b come back with Seleem's dad

3 Think and say: فكر وقل:

From what you have read in the story about Al-Azhar Park, would you like to spend a day there?



a Yes? Tell your partner what things you would like to do in Al-Azhar Park and why.
b No? Tell your partner what you would prefer to do that you can't do in Al-Azhar Park.



Pronunciation

- سوف تتعرف في هذا الدرس على الفرق بين الاصوات /θ/ و/ð/ (th) sounds. لنطق حرفي (th) والرمز الصوتي الدال عليها.

To make the /ð/ and /θ/ sounds, press your tongue against your top teeth. The /θ/ sound is unvoiced, which means you should feel some air on your hand when you say it. With the /ð/ sound, there's no air, but you can feel a vibration on your neck.

- لكى تنطق هذه الأصوات يجب أن تضغط بلسانك على أسنانك العليا.
- هذا الصوت /θ/ يشبه حرف (ث) فى اللغة العربية وهو صوت لا تهتز به الاحبال الصوتية وهذا معناه أنك تشعر بهواء على يدك إذا قربتها من فمك عند خروج هذا الصوت.
- أما الصوت /ð/ يشبه حرف (ذ) فى اللغة العربية ولا يوجد هواء عند خروجه ولكن تشعر باهتزاز فى الأحبال الصوتية.

1 Listen and say these words: استمع وقل هذه الكلمات:

/θ/		/ð/	
thing	شيء	these	هؤلاء
Thursday	يوم الخميس	those	أولئك
think	يعتقد	this	هذا
three	ثلاثة	with	مع
Earth	الأرض	mother	أم
author	مؤلف		

2 Say these words. Add them to the correct column in Exercise 1. Then listen and check:

قل هذه الكلمات. ضعهم في الجدول الآتي حسب نطق حرفي (th) كما بالمثال:

bathroom - father - south - they - other - birthday - clothes - mouth - leather

th /θ/	th /ð/
bathroom	father

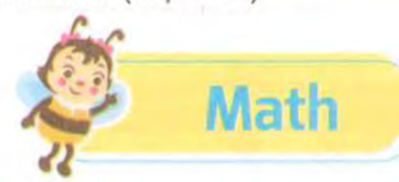
3 Look and write. Add the correct suffix to the words in brackets:

انظر واكتب. أضف النهاية الصحيحة للكلمات ما بين القوسين:

هناك بعض النهايات الشائعة التى تضاف للكلمات لتكوين الصفة مثل النهايات (ive / ous) فى الجدول الآتي:

Word orgin	أصل الكلمة	Adjective	الصفة
poison	سُم	poisonous	سام
act	يتحرك	active	نشيط
fame	شهرة	famous	مشهور
expense	تكلفة	expensive	غالي الثمن
enormity	ضخامة / كِبَر	enormous	ضخم

1- Be careful! That snake is .... (poison)
2- Ali swims and runs. He's very .... (act)
3- Everyone knows Soha. She is very .... (fame)
4- His watch is very .... (expense)



Math

Many tourists come to visit Egypt and one of the most famous places is the Pyramids of Giza. All their sides are triangles. Let's learn more about triangles below.

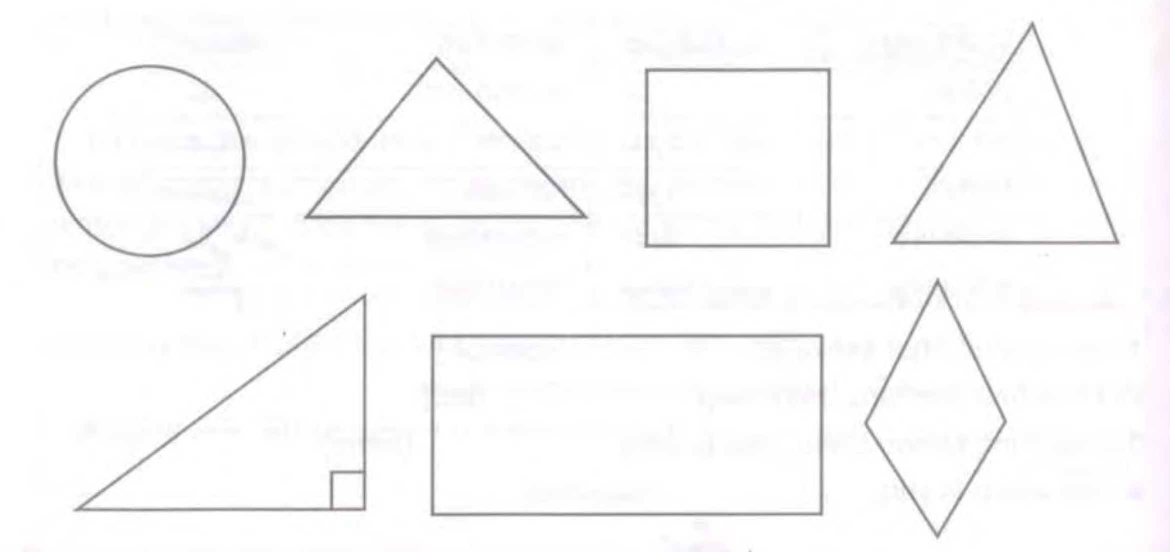
- يأتي الكثيرمن السياح ليزوروا مصر وواحدة من أكثر الأماكن شهرة هى أهرامات الجيزة ، كل جوانبها عبارة عن مثلثات.
- هيا نتعلم المزيد عن المثلثات بالأسفل.

An equilateral triangle		مثلث متساوي الأضلاع (أضلاعه الثلاثة متساوية)
A right angle triangle		مثلث قائم الزاوية (به زاوية قائمة ٩٠°)
An isosceles triangle		مثلث متساوي الساقين (به ضلعين متساويين)
A scalene triangle		مثلث مختلف الأضلاع (كل أضلاعه مختلفة في القياس)

1 Look and read. Color the triangles: انظر واقرأ ولون المثلثات:

A triangle is a 2D shape with three sides.

المثلث هو شكل ثنائي الأبعاد ذو ثلاثة أضلاع.

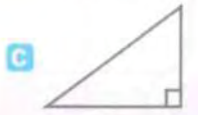


2 Read and match: اقرأ وصل:

1- An equilateral triangle has three equal sides. — a



2- A right angle triangle has one angle that measures 90°. — b



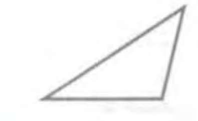
3- An isosceles triangle has two sides of equal length. — c



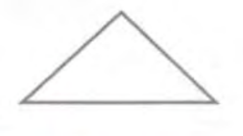
4- A scalene triangle has three sides of different length. — d

3 Look. Circle the correct triangle type:

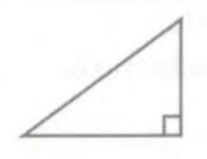
انظر وضع دائرة حول النوع الصحيح للمثلث:



1 right angle / scalene



2 isosceles / equilateral



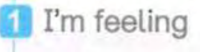
3 right angle / isosceles



4 equilateral / scalene

Activities

1 Listen and complete: استمع وأكمل:



1. Hani can do a lot of activities on ....
2. Hani goes to Alexandria in ....
3. They stay in a .... in front of the sea.
4. They swim in the sea and make sandcastles on the ....

2 Read and match (A) with (B): اقرأ وصل:

A	B
1 I'm feeling	a. plants and birds in the park.
2 Hanaa sat on	b. at the beach.
3 Shehab said that	c. a bit low.
4 I want to be	d. a bench in the park.
5 We enjoyed the beautiful	e. go swimming.
	f. the park was awesome.

3 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

1. you - are - in - the - Why - city?

- -

2. to - Park - go - Al-Azhar - Let's.

- -

3. wanted - Hadi - to - vacation - on - go.

- -

4. thought - I - were - the - beach - you - on.

- -

4 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1- can you come to the park with us

- -

2- let s come back with Muhammad.

- -

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك في التعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.



Lessons 5&6 Writing & Project



Key vocabulary



استمع إلى المفردات:

Morocco	المغرب
Marrakech	مدينة مراكش (المغرب)
France	فرنسا
Paris	مدينة باريس (عاصمة فرنسا)
Eiffel Tower	برج آيفل (باريس)
the Louvre	متحف اللوفر (باريس)
French	اللغة الفرنسية / شخص فرنسي
sights	معالم سياحية
race	يتسابق
beach buggies	عربات شاطئية
paintings	لوحات
diary	مفكرة يومية

Other words كلمات أخرى



museum	متحف
formal language	اللغة الرسمية
local dishes	أكلات شعبية
chef	طاه / طباخ
perhaps	ربما
a bit	قليلاً
At the end of ...	في نهاية ...
shopping	التسوق
handicrafts	مصنوعات يدوية
stall	كشك
sand dunes	كثبان رملية
metal	معدن
smell	رائحة
snorkeling	الغطس
turtles	سلاحف
still	مازال
home	وطن / موطن
wandering	التجول
trip	رحلة قصيرة

Adjectives صفات



perfect	رائع
hungry	جائع
special	مميز / خاص
traditional	تقليدي
crowded / busy	مزدحم
private	خاص
brightly-colored	ذو ألوان زاهية
cultural	حضاري / ثقافي

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
try	يحاول	tried
wait	ينتظر	waited
visit	يزور	visited
remind	يُذَكِّر	reminded
include	يشتمل	included

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
understand	يفهم	understood
speak	يتكلم	spoke
keep up	يجاري	kept up

Study the following

1. **We saw some famous sights from the boat.**
   - رأينا بعض المعالم السياحية المشهورة من القارب.
2. **The Eiffel Tower is really tall and made of metal.**
   - برج آيفل طويل جدا ومصنوع من المعدن.
3. **The Louvre is a beautiful museum with fantastic paintings.**
   - اللوفر هو متحف جميل به لوحات رائعة.
4. **The French people were very kind.**
   - كان الفرنسيون طيبون جدا.
5. **When I spoke English, they understood me!**
   - عندما تحدثت باللغة الإنجليزية فهموني.
6. **At the end of the day, we went to a French restaurant.**
   - في نهاية اليوم ذهبنا إلى مطعم للأكلات الفرنسية.
7. **There's so much to do.**
   - يوجد أشياء كثيرة لتفعلها.
8. **Today we went to Ali Ben Youssef Madrasa, a beautiful museum.**
   - ذهبنا اليوم إلى مدرسة علي بن يوسف (متحف جميل).
9. **I like it there because it reminds me a bit of Al-Azhar Park at home.**
   - احبها لأنها تذكرني قليلا بحديقة الأزهر في وطني (بلدي مصر).
10. **The smells coming from the market stalls make me hungry!**
    - الروائح الآتية من الأكشاك الموجودة بالسوق جعلتني جائع.

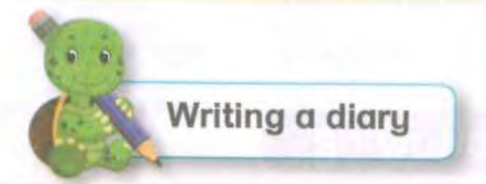
11 We go to the beach to go snorkeling.
- نذهب للشاطيء لكي نمارس رياضة الغطس.

12 We race through the sand dunes in beach buggies!
- نتسابق عبر الكثبان الرملية بالعربات الشاطئية.

13 Can you keep up?
- هل تستطيع أن تجاري (السباق)؟

14 Learn about the city's cultural past with a trip to the museum today.
- تعلم عن حضارة المدينة في الماضي من خلال رحلة إلى المتحف اليوم.

15 You can see the chef making the local dishes.
- يمكنك أن ترى الطاهي (الطباخ) يُعد الأكلات الشعبية.



Writing a diary

When you write a diary, you should... عندما تكتب مفكرة يومية ينبغي أن

Write the date.	تكتب تاريخ اليوم.
Start with "Dear Diary".	تبدأ بـ: مذكراتي العزيزة.
Describe the places / events.	تصف الأماكن والأحداث.
Say how you felt.	تقول ما شعرت به.

1 Read the diary entries. Match the people to the places

اقرأ التدوينات اليومية. صل الناس بالأماكن:



❶ **Marrakech, Morocco**

....



❷ **Eiffel Tower, Paris, France**

....

استمع إلى النصوص:

Reem

July 21st

Dear Diary,

I had such a cool day today. I went on the river. We saw some famous sights[1] from the boat, like the Louvre[2], a beautiful museum with fantastic paintings[3], and the Eiffel Tower[4]. The Eiffel Tower is really tall and made of metal[5]. I tried to speak French[6], but I couldn't really say anything. But the French people were very kind and when I spoke English, they understood[7] me! At the end of the day we went to a French restaurant and had a wonderful meal with potatoes. It was a special day.

Arabic Meaning

١- معالم سياحية
٢- متحف اللوفر
٣- لوحات
٤- برج أيفل
٥- معدن
٦- اللغة الفرنسية
٧- فهم

Amira

April 5th

Dear Diary,

I love this city! There's so much to do. Today we went to Ali Ben Youssef Madrasa, a beautiful museum that is 800 years old! We went early in the morning, but it was still[1] very busy[2] with people. We also visited Jardin Majorelle[3], a lovely garden where we had a picnic. I like it there because it reminds[4] me a bit of Al-Azhar Park at home. But my favorite place is Jemaa el-Fnaa[5], the market[6] place. The smells[7] coming from the market stalls[8] make me hungry! I had a sandwich yesterday. I can't wait[9] to go back there tomorrow!

Arabic Meaning

١- مازال
٢- مزدحم
٣- حديقة ماجوريل بالمغرب
٤- يذكر
٥- جامع الفنا
٦- سوق
٧- روائح
٨- أكشاك
٩- ينتظر

Tip!

Write the date when you start a new diary entry.
اكتب التاريخ عندما تبدأ تدوينة يومية جديدة.

2 Read. Check (✓) the statements that apply

اقرأ. ضع (✓) أمام ما يتم تنفيذه من الجمل عند كتابة تدوينه يومية:

When writing a diary:

1- you should start with "Dear Diary". ☐
2- you should write about how you felt. ☐
3- you should use formal language. ☐
4- you need to remember that other people will read it. ☐
5- you should include personal pronouns like "I" and "me". ☐

3 Read and circle:

اقرأ وضع دائرة:

Read the two diary entries again. Who ...

اقرأ التدوينتين اليومية مرة أخرى. اختر «ريم» أو «أميرة»

1- went on a boat?	Reem	Amira
2- thought somewhere was very crowded?	Reem	Amira
3- went somewhere that was like a place at home?	Reem	Amira
4- saw something beautiful made of metal?	Reem	Amira
5- said that the smell of the food made them hungry?	Reem	Amira
6- ate something made of potatoes for dinner?	Reem	Amira

4 Think of a day when you did something special. Write a diary entry of about 30-40 words:

فكر في يوم عندما فعلت شيئًا مميزًا . اكتب تدوينه يومية من حوالي ٣٠ - ٤٠ كلمة :

Remember:

- Write the date.
- Start with "Dear Diary".
- Describe the places / events.
- Say how you felt.

Think!

We shouldn't read other people's diaries because they are private. However, do you think it's right to read the diaries of people from the past? Why? Why not?

يجب عليك ألا تقرأ يوميات الآخرين، لأن هذه اليوميات خاصة بهم ولكن هل من الصحيح أن تقرأ اليوميات الخاصة بالآخرين من الماضي في رأيك لماذا؟ لما لا؟

5 Read. Do you want to go on this vacation? Why? / Why not?

اقرأ. هل تريد أن تذهب في أجازة؟لماذا؟ لما لا؟

My perfect vacation.





Day 1

In the morning, we go to the beach to go snorkeling[1]. Swim with the turtles[2] and brightly-colored[3] fish! The afternoon can be spent on the beach with a picnic[4] and a good book.



Arabic Meaning
١- يذهب للغطس
٢- سلاحف
٣- زاهي/ ذات ألوان زاهية
٤- طعام للنزهة

Day 2

Today we race[5] through the sand dunes in beach buggies[6]! It's fun and fast! Can you keep up[7]?



Arabic Meaning
٥- يتسابق
٦- عربات شاطئية
٧- يواصل

Day 3

Spend a relaxed day shopping and wandering through[8] the markets. Perhaps[9] buy some traditional handicrafts[10] to take home.



Arabic Meaning
٨- التجول عبر
٩- ربما
١٠- مصنوعات يدوية

Day 4

Learn about the city's cultural[11] past with a trip[12] to the museum today. In the evening, we go to a traditional restaurant where you can see the chef making the local dishes[13].



Arabic Meaning
١١- ثقافي
١٢- رحلة قصيرة
١٣- أكلات شعبية

Activities



1 Read and match (A) with (B):
اقرأ وصل:

A	B
1 You can see the chef	a. museum with fantastic paintings.
2 We go to the beach to	b. of Al-Azhar Park.
3 When I spoke English,	c. making the local dishes.
4 The Louvre is a beautiful	d. go snorkeling.
5 It reminds me	e. made of metal.
	f. they understood me!

2 Read the text and answer the questions:
اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

I'm Walid. I want to have a perfect vacation. My next trip is to Cairo. I love this city! I want to go to the Cairo Tower. It is so tall and made of metal. I want to go to the Egyptian Museum. I will learn a lot about Egypt in the past. I also want to visit Al-Azhar Park. __It__ has a lot of fantastic trees and flowers. It sounds interesting! I can't wait to go there soon!

A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The Cairo Tower is made of ....
   a carton　b paper　c mud　d metal

2. The underlined word "**It**" refers to ....
   a Cairo　b the Cairo Tower　c Egyptian Museum　d Al-Azhar Park

B- Answer the following questions:

3. What does Walid want to have?

----

4. Where will Walid learn about Egypt in the past?



3 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:
أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

1. the - on - went - I - river.

----

2. you - Can - up - keep?

----

3. some - saw - sights - famous - Magda.

----

4. metal - Eiffel - The - made of - is - Tower.

----

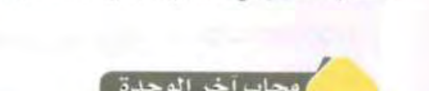
4 Punctuate the following:
ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

1- The french people were very kind

2- why does Mohamed feel hungry

----

5 Write a paragraph of Forty (40) words using the following guiding elements:
اكتب فقرة إنشائية من ٤٠ كلمة عن:



A race through the sand

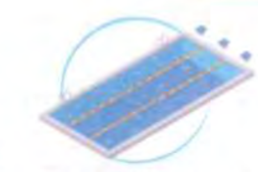
sand dunes - beach buggies



Review

Key vocabulary


hotel فندق


swimming pool حمام سباحة


high-rise building ناطحة سحاب


theme park ملاهي


ticket تذكرة


museum متحف


airport مطار


tourist سائح


passport جواز سفر

traditional	تقليدي
daytrip	رحلة في وقت النهار
diary	مفكرة يومية
go on vacation	يذهب في إجازة
a bit low	حزين قليلا
diary entry	تدوينة يومية
wander	يتجول
handicrafts	مصنوعات يدوية
stalls	أكشاك

bench	مقعد طويل
awesome	مذهل
sights	معالم سياحية
race	يتسابق
beach buggies	عربات شاطئية
paintings	لوحات
Morocco	دولة المغرب
Eiffel Tower	برج آيفل
the Louvre	متحف اللوفر (باريس)

Other words كلمات أخرى



luckily	لحسن الحظ
flight	رحلة جوية
vacation	إجازة / عطلة
footprints	آثار القدم
banks	ضفاف
leaflet	منشور
tour	جولة

chance	فرصة
destination	جهة الوصول
mud	وحل / طين
exploring	استكشاف
trading center	مركز تجاري
citadel	قلعة
suddenly	فجأة

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
relax	يسترخي	relaxed
harvest	يحصد	harvested
check in	يسجل وصول	checked in
head out	يتوجه إلى	headed out
float	يطفو	floated
walk around	يتجول حول	walked around
discover	يكتشف	discovered

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع		Past ماضٍ
spend	يقضي (وقت)	spent
fly	يطير / يسافر جوا	flew
take photos	يلتقط صور	took photos
wake up	يستيقظ	woke up
put on	يرتدي	put on
shine	تسطع (الشمس)	shone
drive	يقود (سيارة)	drove

Grammar قواعد لغوية

Prepositions of time حروف الجر الخاصة بالوقت

1 on

نستخدم حرف الجر **on** قبل أيام الأسبوع والمناسبات الخاصة والتواريخ المحددة:

- I don't go to a school **on** Fridays.
- I am having a party **on** my birthday.
- I was born **on** July 6th, 2010.

2 at

نستخدم حرف الجر **at** قبل الوقت وبعض العبارات:

- The train to Aswan leaves **at** 8 pm. / **at** lunchtime / night / midnight

3 in

نستخدم حرف الجر **in** قبل الشهور وفصول السنة والسنوات وأيضا أوقات اليوم:

- My birthday is **in** June. - I was born **in** 2010.
- **in** the afternoon / evening

لاحظ إذا جاء رقم بعد الشهر نستخدم **on** لأن هنا نقصد اليوم:

- My birthday is **on** October 11th.



Pronunciation



/θ/		/ð/	
thing	شيء	these	هؤلاء
Thursday	يوم الخميس	those	أولئك
think	يعتقد	this	هذا
three	ثلاثة	with	مع
Earth	الأرض	mother	أم
author	مؤلف		



مهارات الكتابة

Write a paragraph of Forty (40) words.

Answers to Paragraphs

Lesson 3

What you do at different times



1. On Thursdays, I can do my things at different times. I go swimming at seven am. I always take my swimming shorts I go to the park at twelve am. Then, I go to the museum at two o'clock. I enjoy my day.

Lessons 5&6

A race through the sand



2. I like racing through the sand dunes in beach buggies. It's fun and fast. I go with my friends. It's exciting and safe. I go there every week. I enjoy my time there. This is my perfect vacation.

Activity Unit 12

The things you enjoyed on vacation



3. On vacations, I learn new things. My father took us to the Egyptian Museum. We saw fantastic statues there. The statues are made of gold or rocks. We knew many things and enjoyed a lot. I want to go there again.

Al-Azhar Exercises  الأسئلة الخاصة بالأزهر الشريف

A- Listening

نص الاستماع اخر الكتاب

1 Listen and choose the correct answer: استمع وأختر:

1. Ali is a .... (doctor - farmer - teacher)
2. Ali grows vegetables and keeps .... (animals - birds - dinosaurs)

B- Language Functions

2 Read and complete the dialog: اقرأ وأكمل:

snorkeling - sandcastles - beach

A: Where would you like to go?
B: I want to go to the ______.
A: Do you want to go __________ ?
B: Yes. I want to make _____,too.

C- Reading Comprehension

3 Read and choose the correct answer: اقرأ واختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

Hamza visited the zoo last weekend. He saw a lot of animals. He fed the elephant and the giraffe. He took photos with them. He liked his vacation.

Choose the correct answer:

1. Hamza visited the __________. (zoo - park - beach)
2. Hamza saw a lot of __________. (rocks - lakes - animals)
3. He fed the __________ and the giraffe. (lion - elephant - deer)
4. He took ________ with the elephant and the giraffe. (carrots - lakes - photos)
5. Hamza liked his __________. (football - vacation - school)

D- Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة

1. My birthday is ____________ Monday.
   a in   b on   c at
2. I put my clothes in a _________.
   a passport   b vacation   c suitcase
3. Trees are ___________ resources.
   a natural   b man-made   c human
4. My family wanted to go on _________.
   a suitcase   b vacation   c passport
5. I get up ___________ 7 am.
   a in   b on   c at

E- The Reader

5 Choose the correct answer : اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. Ramy looks down at the _________ near the path.
   a seas   b rocks   c rivers
2. Dad takes a photo of a fennec _________.
   a box   b ox   c fox

F- Writing

6 Write a short paragraph of Four (4) sentences about: اكتب فقرة إنشائية من ٤ جمل عن:

A visit to the theme park



Activity ON UNIT 12

1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False): استمع واكتب (صواب) أو (خطأ):

استمع إلى النص أخر الكتاب

		True	False
1	Ramy and Adam are friends.		
2	They are in primary four.		
3	Ramy likes playing football after school on Monday.		
4	Adam goes swimming on Friday with his sister, Rawan.		

2 Listen and complete: استمع واكمل:

نص الاستماع اخر الكتاب

1. Egypt is a good destination for ....
2. Millions of people .... Egypt every year.
3. They spend their .... in Egypt.
4. They enjoy seeing many ....

3 Read and match: اقرأ وصل:

A	B
1 Our school year	a. to travel to a different country.
2 You can go on different	b. a hotel when he is on vacation.
3 Khaled stays in	c. ends in the summer.
4 You need a passport	d. put your clothes in the suitcase.
5 When you travel,	e. rides at the theme park.
	f. arriving at the airport.

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك ان يتعامل مع هذه الأسئلة

4 Read the following and answer the questions:

اقرأ الآتى ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

My name is Reda. I want to spend my next weekend in the Orman Garden. It is one of the most famous botanical gardens in Egypt. It is located in Giza. The garden has a lot of beautiful trees and flowers. It has a spring festival every year. The Spring Festival usually starts in March and it is an important Egyptian cultural event in spring. The festival usually lasts for a month. It will be a good vacation.

A- Choose the right answer from a, b, or c:

1. The Spring Festival usually starts in ....
   a July   b March   c May   d June
2. Reda will have a .... vacation .
   a bad   b useless   c boring   d good

B- Answer the following questions:

3. What does Reda want? ---------------------------------
4. Where is the Orman Garden located? ---------------------------------

5 Read and reorder the following to make sentences:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات

1. snorkeling - We - going - the weekend - on - are. ----------------------
2. your - Friday - Is - on - birthday? ----------------------
3. sandcastles - can - the beach - make - on - We. ----------------------
4. does - When - land - flight - our? ----------------------

6 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للاتى:

1- ali can have fun at the theme park ----------------------
2- did you visit Al-Azhar Park at night ----------------------

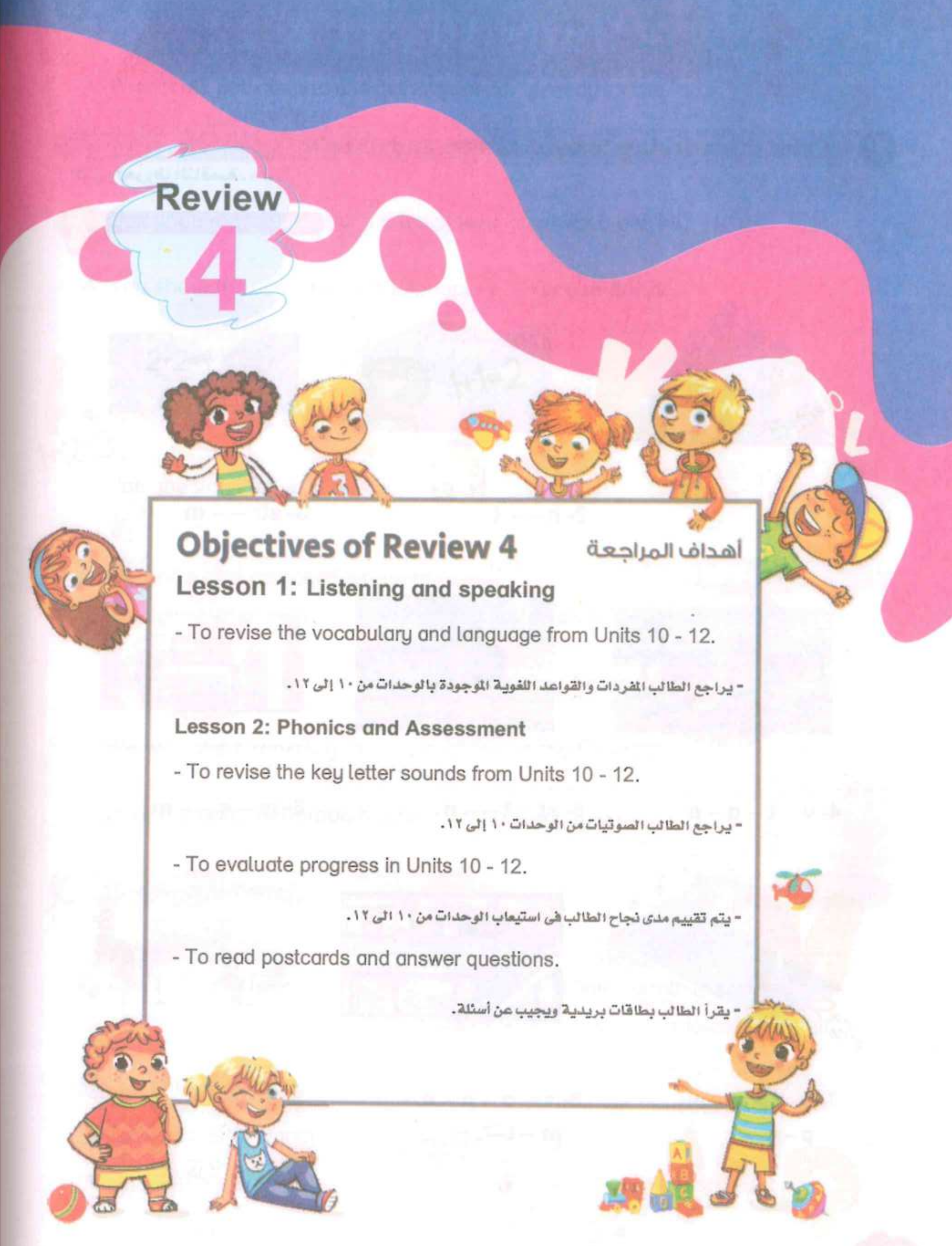
7 Write a paragraph of Forty (40) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٤٠) كلمة عن:

مجاب آخر الوحدة

The things you enjoyed on vacation

statues - enjoyed



Lesson 1 ★ Units 10 , 11 & 12

1 **Write the missing letters. Listen and check:**

أكتب الحروف الناقصة :

استمع إلى النص آخر الكتاب



1- city



2- h – – l



3- str – – m



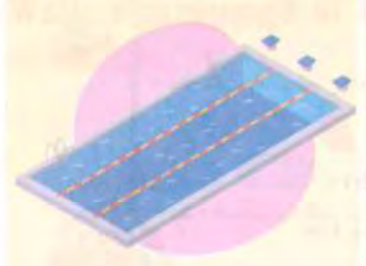
4- v – l – a – e



5- st – t – – n



6- m – s – – m



7- s – i – m – n – p – o –



8- s – o – p – n – m – l –



9- r – s – a – r – n –

2 **Rewrite the sentences using imperatives:**

أعد كتابة الجمل مستخدماً صيغة الأمر:

1. First of all, you need to check that your car is ready for the trip.
   First of all, check that your car is ready for the trip.
2. You shouldn't eat while you're driving.
   ----
3. You should make sure you drive slowly in crowded places.
   ----
4. You shouldn't use your mobile phone when you're driving.
   ----
5. You must stop when the traffic light is red.
   ----
6. You mustn't park in wrong places.
   ----
7. You shouldn't drive when you are tired.
   ----

3 **Choose the correct answer:** اختر الإجابة الصحيحة :

1. We saw a lot of wonderful **paintings / factories** in the museums.
   ----
2. Tourists like to see the amazing **monuments / fields** in Luxor.
   ----
3. We will take a **relaxing / fixing** boat trip on the River Nile.
   ----
4. I like the **bad / delicious** food my mother usually cooks.
   ----

4 **Read and match:** إقرأ وصل :

A	B
1 Don't make noise	a. when I arrive in London.
2 I will send you another email	b. does his homework carefully.
3 My brother usually	c. inside the school library.
4 Tourists like to wander	d. through the streets of Khan Al-Khalili.
5 My mom and dad	e. went on a desert hike.

Lesson 2 ★ Units 10 , 11 & 12

1 Check (✓) the sentences that are correct. Rewrite the sentences that are incorrect :

ضع علامة صح أمام الجمل الصحيحة . أعد كتابة الجمل الغير صحيحة :

1. It was very sunnily, so I wore my sunglasses. ( )

   It was very sunny, so I wore my sunglasses.
2. We went for a nice walk on the nature trail. ( )
3. Dad often goes walking, so he knows the nature trail well. ( )
4. Dad walked fast, but Mom walked more slowly. ( )
5. Tamer wore his new hiking boots, which were very comfortably. ( )

2 Complete the sentences using the words in the box:

أكمل الجمل مستخدماً الكلمات فى القائمة :

carefully - fast - well - heavy - slowly

1. We studied the map carefully , so we didn't get lost.
2. I packed lots of clothes in my suitcase, so it was too ....
3. Wael can speak English very ....
4. They had a picnic then walked .... through the park.
5. How .... can you swim?

3 Circle the correct words:

ضع دائرة على الكلمات الصحيحة :

1. We flew to Alexandria **at / in / on** Monday.
2. Our flight leaves **at / in /on** 8 am.
3. Many people leave the city **at / in / on** summer.
4. We are going to the park **at / in / on** the afternoon.
5. Her cousins usually visit her **at / in / on** July.

4 Read. Match the places (1 - 4) to the postcards (a-d):

إقرأ. صل المكان المناسب بالبطاقة الخاصة به :

1. a busy city ☐
2. a desert ☐
3. a nature trail ☐
4. a village a

a
Hi Magdy,
I'm having a lovely time here. It's peaceful and very quiet, especially at night. There are a few shops and houses. There is only one restaurant, but it's great! Everyone who lives here is really friendly.
Bye!
Ali

b
Dear Amr,
Thank you for telling me to pack some good hiking shoes and a sun hat! We have walked for many hours every day. There are amazing things to see - some unusual flowers and trees. One day, I was lucky enough to see a fennec fox and a wild cat!
Hope you're all well,
Salah

c
Hi Ghada,
We arrived on Monday, and we haven't stopped! There is so much to see here. We visited some museums and the theater, and we had an amazing tour of famous places. It's really fun, but very busy and crowded.
See you soon,
Randa

d
Hello Rabab,
How are you? I'm having a real adventure here. We arrived on the weekend and set up our tent. It's quite difficult to sleep in a tent on sand! At night, we sit around a fire. (It gets really cold here at night). We sing songs and eat delicious food, which we cook on the fire. You can see a million stars! It's beautiful.
See you next week,
Sahar

5 Imagine you are on holiday in one of the places 1-4 in Exercise 4. Write a postcard of 30 words to a friend. Think about:

تخيل أنك فى إجازة فى أحد الأماكن فى التمرين ٤ . أكتب بطاقة من ٣٠ كلمة لصديق:

- where you are ....
- how you traveled ....
- who you are there with ....
- what you did yesterday ....
- why you like the place ....

on Units (10,11 & 12)

Activity



1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False): استمع واكتب (صح) أو (خطأ):

نص الاستماع اخر الكتاب

	True	False
1 I went to Alexandria in winter.		
2 The hotel was near the beach.		
3 There were many tourists in the hotel.		
4 The vacation was wonderful.		

2 Listen and complete: استمع وأكمل:

نص الاستماع اخر الكتاب

1. Ramy wants to play .... after school.
2. Walid has a .... appointment.
3. Walid's tooth ....
4. Ramy advised Walid to eat .... food.

3 Read and match (A) with (B): اقرأ وصل:

A	B
1 Don't touch the paintings	a. is a nice person.
2 I bought some clothes	b. carefully for the trip.
3 On vacation, I take my phone	c. when you visit a museum.
4 Tourists like visiting	d. the monuments in Luxor.
5 She packed her suitcase	e. to take photos.
	f. from the shopping mall.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ القطعة وأجب عن الأسئلة:

Libraries are important places. We go to the library to read and learn a lot of useful information. There are many rules to follow in the library. We shouldn't eat or drink in the library. We should keep <u>it</u> clean and put the books we use on the shelves. We should be quiet, too. If we need any help, we can ask the librarian to help us.

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك ان يتعامل مع هذه الأسئلة

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The underlined word "it" refers to the ....
   a information b library c book d librarian
2. We should be .... in the library.
   a noisy b amazed c quiet d bored

B. Answer the following questions:

3. Why do we go to the library?
   ----
4. Who should you ask for help in the library?
   ----

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

اعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

1. stone - is - A - a large - rock.
   ----
2. a - Mr - designer - Gamal - clever - Is ?
   ----
3. Japan - fly - tomorrow - We'll - to.
   ----
4. did - How - walk - across - the tortoise - the grass?
   ----

6 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

1. will your next class start at 10 pm
   ----
2. i'm free on this weekend
   ----

7 Write a paragraph of Forty (40) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٤٠) كلمة عن:

Al-Azhar Park

Cairo - fantastic place



A Fantastic Family Adventure

مغامرة عائلية رائعة



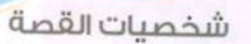
Objectives of the Reader

أهداف القصة

1. To read and understand a story. ١ - يقرأ الطالب ويفهم قصة.
2. To enjoy reading in English. ٢ - يستمتع الطالب بالقراءة باللغة الإنجليزية.
3. To identify characters in a story. ٣ - يتعرف الطالب على شخصيات قصة.
4. To identify the key events and vocabulary in a story. ٤ - يتعرف الطالب على الأحداث الرئيسية والمفردات في قصة.
5. To review the story and check understanding. ٥ - يراجع الطالب القصة ويتأكد من فهمه لها.
6. To put events from a story in order. ٦ - يرتب أحداث من القصة بشكل صحيح.
7. To examine the characters in a story. ٧ - يختبر الطالب في شخصيات القصة.
8. To retell the story. ٨ - يعيد الطالب رواية القصة.

Vocabulary

Characters of the Reader



شخصيات القصة





Dad
الأب



Mom
الأم



Ramy
رامى



Malak
ملك



Grandpa
الجد



Grandma
الجدة



Uncle Youssef
العم يوسف



Picture Dictionary
قاموس الصور





استمع إلى المفردات والنصوص:



dinosaur الديناصور

Dinosaurs were very big animals which lived millions of years ago.

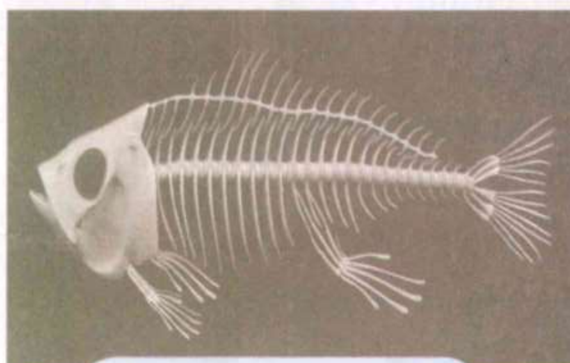
كانت الديناصورات حيوانات ضخمة عاشت منذ ملايين السنين.



bones العظام

Our body has many bones to help us stand up.

جسمنا به عظاماً عديدة لتساعدنا على الوقوف.



skeleton هيكل عظمى

Fish and other animals have a skeleton made of bones inside their bodies.

تمتلك الأسماك والحيوانات الأخرى هيكل عظمي داخل أجسادهما.



tracks آثار أقدام

Animals' feet leave tracks on the ground where they walked.

تترك أقدام الحيوانات آثارًا علي الأرض التي ساروا عليها.



binoculars المنظار
نظارة مكبرة / معظمة

She likes looking at things in the distance with her binoculars.

تحب النظر إلى الأشياء البعيدة بالمنظار الخاص بها.



ibex الوعل

An ibex is a type of desert animal like a gazelle.

الوعل هو حيوان صحراوى مثل الغزال.



archaeologist عالم آثار

An archaeologist is someone who digs underground to find objects from many years ago and studies them.

عالم الآثار هو الشخص الذي يحفر تحت الأرض للعثور علي أشياء من سنوات عديدة ويدرسها.



archaeological dig حفر آثرى

An archaeological dig is when people work together to find something under the ground.

ينشيء الحفر الأثري عندما يعمل الناس معًا للعثور على شيء ما تحت الأرض.




استمع الى نص القصة

1



Ramy and Malak are playing in the yard(1). Suddenly Dad calls them from the house.

"Hey kids, come and see this story in the newspaper(2)!"

The children run inside to see. Dad says, "Look. They found something amazing(3) near Grandma and Grandpa's village."

يلعب رامي وملك في الفناء. فجأة ينادي عليهم والدهم من المنزل.

"يا أولاد، تعالوا وشاهدوا هذه القصة في الجريدة!"

يركض الأولاد إلى الداخل ليروا. يقول والدهم "انظروا. لقد وجدوا شيئًا رائعًا بالقرب من قرية جدكم وجدتكم."

"What is it. Dad?" asks Ramy."It looks scary(4)!"

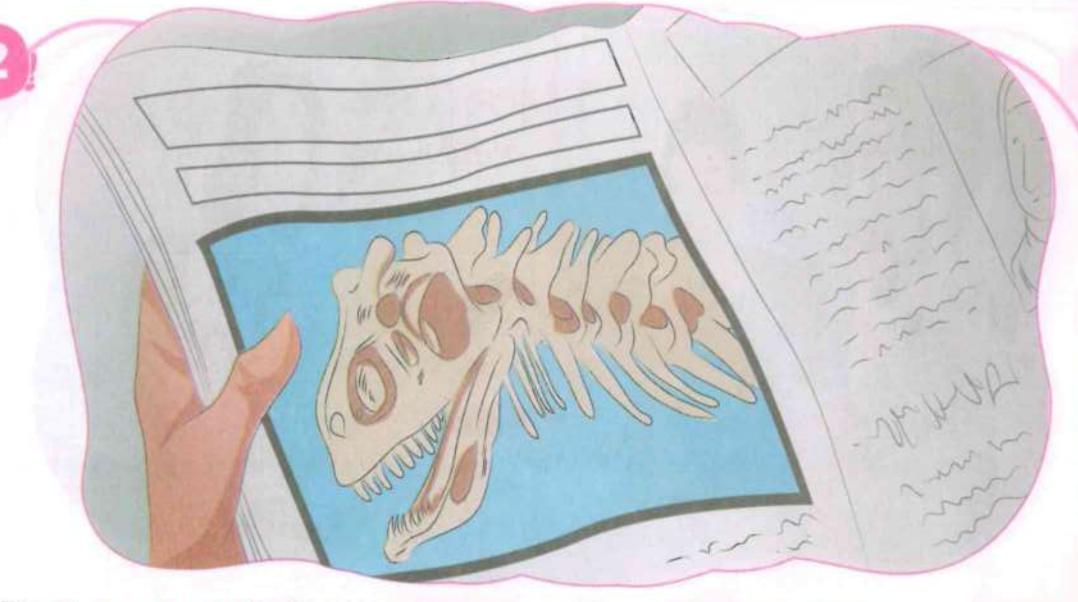
Dad says, "No Ramy, it's not scary at all. It's the skeleton(5) of a dinosaur(6). A group of archaeologists(7) found it. And your uncle Youssef is one of those archaeologists!"

يسأل رامي "ما هذا يا أبي؟ إنه يبدو مخيفًا!"

يقول الأب "لا يا رامي، إنه ليس مخيفًا على الإطلاق. إنه هيكل عظمي لديناصور. عثر عليه مجموعة من علماء الآثار. وعمك يوسف واحداً من هؤلاء."

1- yard فناء	2- newspaper جريدة	3- amazing مذهل	4- scary مخيف
5- skeleton هيكل عظمى	6- dinosaur ديناصور	7- archaeologists علماء آثار	

2



That's awesome(1), Dad!" says Malak. "The dinosaur skeleton is really old, isn't it?"

"Yes, that's right, Malak "says Dad. "It's about 98 million years old!"

"Wow! Uncle Youssef has got a really interesting(2) job, hasn't he?" says Ramy.

"Yes, he has. And his work is important(3) too. It helps us learn about the past." says Dad.

تقول ملك "هذا رائع يا أبي! الهيكل العظمي للديناصور قديم حقًا، أليس كذلك؟"

يقول الأب "نعم، هذا صحيح يا ملك. يصل عمره إلى حوالي ٩٨ مليون عام!"

يقول رامي "رائع! يعمل العم يوسف في وظيفة ممتعة حقًا، أليس كذلك؟"

يقول الأب "نعم، هو كذلك. وعمله مهم أيضا. إنه يساعدنا في التعرف على الماضي."

1- awesome رائع	2- interesting شيق	3- important مهم





Later that evening Ramy and his family are having dinner.

Dad says, "Do you want to go there the next time we go to Grandma's house?"

في وقت لاحق من ذلك المساء يتناول رامي وعائلته العشاء.

يقول الأب "هل تريد الذهاب إلى هناك عندما نذهب إلى منزل جدتك في المرة القادمة ؟"

Ramy says, "That's a great idea, Dad. It would be an adventure[1] to go into the desert!"

Mom says, "There's a beautiful nature trail[2] there. Why don't we walk that together?"

"Oh yes please. Mom! I love nature." says Malak.

يقول رامي "هذه فكرة رائعة يا أبي. الذهاب إلى الصحراء سيكون مغامرة!"

تقول الأم "يوجد ممشى (درب) طبيعي جميل هناك. لماذا لا نسيرفيه معًا؟"

تقول ملك "نعم من فضلك يا أمي! أحب الطبيعة."

1- adventure	مغامرة	2- nature trail	ممشى (درب) طبيعي



"Ramy! Malak!" Grandma calls. She is so excited[1] to see her grandchildren[2].

"I have prepared your favorite things - feteer[3] and mint tea![4] Come inside and eat."

تنادي الجدة "رامي! ملك!" إنها متحمسة للغاية لرؤية أحفادها.

"أعددت أشيائكم المفضلة - فطير وشاي بالنعناع! تعالوا إلى الداخل وتناولوا الطعام."

"Hello," says Grandpa to Mom and Dad. "It's so good to see you."

"It's lovely to be here," says Dad. "Tomorrow we want to take the children on a nature trail."

يقول الجد لأمي وأبي "مرحبًا، إنه من الجيد رؤيتكم".

يقول أبي "من الرائع أن نكون هنا. نريد غدًا أن نأخذ الأولاد إلى الممشى (الدرب) الطبيعي."

"Excellent," says Grandpa. "There's lots to see in our area. It's a beautiful place."

يقول الجد "ممتاز. هناك الكثير لتروه في منطقتنا. إنه مكان جميل."

1- excited	متحمس/مسرور	2- grandchildren	أحفاد	3- feteer	فطير	4- mint tea	شاي بالنعناع



The next morning everyone is happy. They are ready to walk the nature trail. They are wearing hats, scarves, and sunglasses.

في صباح اليوم التالي الجميع سعداء. إنهم مستعدون للسير في الممشى (الدرب) الطبيعي. إنهم يرتدون القبعات والأوشحة ونظارات الشمس.

They have snacks and water in their backpacks[1]. Mom has some binoculars[2] too. She wants to look at the amazing birds that live here. They are in a beautiful part of Egypt with many types of rare[3] animals.

لديهم وجبات خفيفة وماء في حقائب الظهر الخاصة بهم. أمي لديها منظار (نظارة مكبرة) أيضًا. إنها تريد أن تنظر إلى الطيور الرائعة التي تعيش هنا. إنهم في جزء جميل من مصر حيث يحتوي علي العديد من أنواع الحيوانات النادرة.

1- backpacks	حقائب ظهر	2- binoculars	منظار (نظارة مكبرة)	3- rare	نادر

6



It's a lovely warm day, not too hot. It's a perfect[1] day for walking. There are cactus[2] plants and palm trees and they see sheep and some camels.

إنه يوم جميل ودافئ. ليس شديد الحرارة. إنه يوم مثالي للمشي. يوجد نباتات الصبار والنخيل وهم يشاهدون الخراف وبعض الجمال.

Malak is very pleased because she loves animals. "Please walk quietly and carefully everyone." she says."If we are quiet, we could see a fennec fox[3], or a dorcas gazelle[4], or maybe a sand cat."

تشعر ملك بسعادة بالغة لأنها تحب الحيوانات. تقول "أرجو من الجميع المشي بهدوء وبعناية. عندما نكون هادئين، يمكننا مشاهدة ثعلب الفنك أو غزال دوركاس أو ربما قطة الرمال".

The family continue along the trail. Ramy sees animals' tracks[5] in the sand.

Dad takes a photo of a fennec fox. Mom sees many beautiful birds. Everyone is enjoying the trail.

تواصل العائلة السير على طول الممشى. يشاهد رامي آثار أقدام الحيوانات في الرمال. يلتقط أبي صوراً لثعلب الفنك. تشاهد أمي العديد من الطيور الجميلة. الجميع يستمتع بالممشى.

1- perfect	مثالي	2- cactus	نبات الصبار	3- fennec fox	ثعلب الفنك
4- dorcas gazelle	غزال دوركاس	5- tracks	آثار أقدام		

7



Then Mom says."Hey everyone. I have something in my shoe. Can we stop for a minute?"
She sits down. The others drink some water and wait. Ramy looks down at the rocks near the path. He sees some strange shapes inside them.

ثم تقول الأم: "مرحبًا بالجميع. لدي شيء في حذائي. هل يمكننا التوقف لدقيقة؟"
تجلس الأم. يشرب الآخرون بعض الماء وينتظرون. ينظر رامي للأسفل إلى الصخور بالقرب من الطريق. يرى بعض الأشكال الغريبة بداخلها.

"Look!" he says."What are these things in the rocks, Dad?"
"I don't know," says Dad."They look like bones[1] ..."
"We are very near the place they found the dinosaur skeleton," says Mom. "Maybe they are dinosaur bones!"

"يقول رامي "أنظر! ما هذه الأشياء في الصخور يا أبي؟
يقول الأب "لا أعرف. تبدو مثل العظام."
تقول الأم "نحن قريبون جدًا من المكان الذي وجدوا فيه الهيكل العظمي للديناصور. ربما تكون عظام ديناصور."

Ramy is very excited."Let's ask Uncle Youssef!" he says."Dad, can we call him?"
"Yes, of course." says Dad.
Uncle Youssef is very interested in[2] the rocks Ramy found. He tells Dad to take some photographs[3] of them and meet him at Grandma's house for dinner.

رامي متحمس جدًا ويقول "لنسأل العم يوسف! هل يمكن أن نتصل به يا أبي؟"
يقول الأب "نعم بالطبع."
العم يوسف مهتم جدًا بالصخور التي وجدها رامي. يخبر أبي أن يلتقط بعض الصور لهم وأن يلتقي به في منزل جدتي على العشاء.

1- bones	عظام	2- interested in	مهتم بـ	3- photographs	صور فوتوغرافية

8



Later that evening Dad shows Uncle Youssef the photos and Ramy shows him the place on the map. Uncle Youssef asks the family to go back there with him the next day.

في وقت لاحق من ذلك المساء ، يعرض أبي الصور على العم يوسف ويوضح له رامي المكان على الخريطة. يطلب العم يوسف من العائلة العودة معه هناك في اليوم التالي.

9



The next day they go back along the trail. They find Ramy's rocks and Uncle Youssef looks at them carefully.

في اليوم التالي يعودون على امتداد الممشى. يعثروا على صخور رامي و ينظر عمه يوسف اليهم بعناية.

"They are not dinosaur bones in the rocks," says Uncle Youssef. "But they are certainly[1] very old. They are probably from a type of ancient ibex that doesn't exist[2] now."

يقول العم يوسف "لا يوجد عظام ديناصور في الصخور. لكنها بالتأكيد قديمة جدًا. ربما هي عظام لنوع قديم من من أنواع الوعل والغير موجود الآن."

Ramy is disappointed[3] because the bones are not from a dinosaur. But Uncle Youssef says, "Well done Ramy for finding them! It is important to take time to look at the world around us and watch things - just like an archaeologist! Now, would you all like to come to the dig and see my dinosaur skeleton?" "Yes please, Uncle Youssef!" say Ramy and Malak.

يصاب رامي بخيبة أمل لأن العظام ليست عظام ديناصور. لكن العم يوسف يقول "أحسنت يا رامي في العثور عليها! من المهم أن تخصص بعض من وقتك في النظر إلى العالم من حولك ومشاهدة الأشياء - تمامًا مثل عالم الآثار! الآن، هل ترغبون جميعًا في القدوم إلى عملية التنقيب ورؤية الهيكل العظمي للديناصور الذى وجدته؟"
يقول رامي وملك "نعم من فضلك يا عمي يوسف!"

1- certainly	بالتأكيد	2- doesn't exist	غير موجود	3- disappointed	محبط

10



"Here he is," says Uncle Youssef. "What do you think?"
"Wow!" says Ramy."It's amazing to think it lived millions of years ago."
"And that its bones were under the ground for such a long time." says Malak.

"In fact, we found the skeleton because of climate change[1]." says Uncle Youssef.

يقول العم يوسف "ها هو، ما رأيكم؟"
يقول رامي "رائع! إنه لأمر مدهش أن تتخيل أنه عاش منذ ملايين السنين."
تقول ملك "وأن عظامه كانت تحت الأرض لمثل هذه الفترة الطويلة."
يقول العم يوسف "في الواقع، وجدنا الهيكل العظمي بسبب تغير المناخ."

"Now there is less rain and fewer plants. This means the ground is dry[2] and the wind can blow[3] away the sand. Things that were under the ground come to the surface[4]. That's good for archaeologists but bad for the planet[5]."

"الآن هناك أمطار أقل ونباتات أقل. وهذا يعني أن الأرض جافة ويمكن للرياح أن تعصف بالرمال. "الأشياء التي كانت تحت الأرض تظهر على السطح. هذا جيد لعلماء الآثار ولكنه سيء للكوكب."

1- climate change	تغير المناخ	2- dry	جاف	3- blow	تعصف / تهب (للرياح)
4- surface	سطح	5- planet	كوكب		

11



"Later everyone is getting ready to go home.

"Thanks for showing us the dinosaur, Uncle Youssef." says Ramy" "It was so interesting. I would love to be an archaeologist. It's such a cool job!."

في وقت لاحق يستعد الجميع للعودة إلى المنزل.

يقول رامي "شكرًا للسماح برؤية الديناصور يا عم يوسف. لقد كان شيقاً للغاية. أريد أن أصبح عالم آثار. يا له من عمل رائع!"

"It's fascinating[1] work, but it's hard," says Uncle Youssef. "Sometimes we look for years and don't find anything."

"We can help if you're looking for other dinosaurs!" says Malak.

يقول العم يوسف "إنه عمل رائع، لكنه شاق". "في بعض الأحيان نبحث لسنوات ولا نجد شيئاً." تقول ملك "يمكننا المساعدة إذا كنت تبحث عن ديناصورات أخرى!"

"Thanks for all the delicious[2] food." says Mom." It was lovely to see you both again."

"Thank you dear. Come back and see us soon." says Grandma.

تقول الأم "شكرًا على كل الطعام اللذيذ. كان من الرائع أن أراكما مرة أخرى."

تقول الجدة "شكرًا لك عزيزتي. تعالى لزيارتنا قريبًا."

1- fascinating	رائع	2- delicious	لذيذ

12



"So, did you enjoy our trip?" asks Mom in the car.

"Yes, I thought it was fantastic." says Ramy. "Me too!" says Malak.

تسأل الأم في السيارة "إذن، هل استمتعتما برحلتنا؟"

يقول رامي "نعم، اعتقد أنها كانت رائعة." تقول ملك "وأنا أيضًا!"

"What do you think you learned from it?" asks Dad.

Ramy says, "I learned it's important to look around us carefully and notice things in our environment[1]."

"Yes, that is how you can discover interesting things." adds Malak.

"You're right, kids" says Dad."Well done!"

يسأل الأب "ماذا تعلمتما منها في رأيكما؟"

يقول رامي "تعلمت أنه من المهم أن ننظر حولنا بعناية وأن نلاحظ الأشياء في بيئتنا."

تضيف ملك "نعم، هذه هي الطريقة التي يمكنك من خلالها اكتشاف أشياء مثيرة للاهتمام."

يقول الأب "أنتم على حق يا أولاد، أحسنتم!"

1- environment	البيئة



Activity

1 Label the people with the names in the box:

اكتب أسماء الشخصيات من القائمة تحت الصور:

Mom - Ramy - Grandma - Grandpa - Dad - Malak - Uncle Youssef

1 
Uncle Youssef

2 
....

3 
....

4 
....

5 
....

6 
....

7 
....

2 Read. Decide if the sentences are True (T) or False (F). Correct the false sentences in your notebook

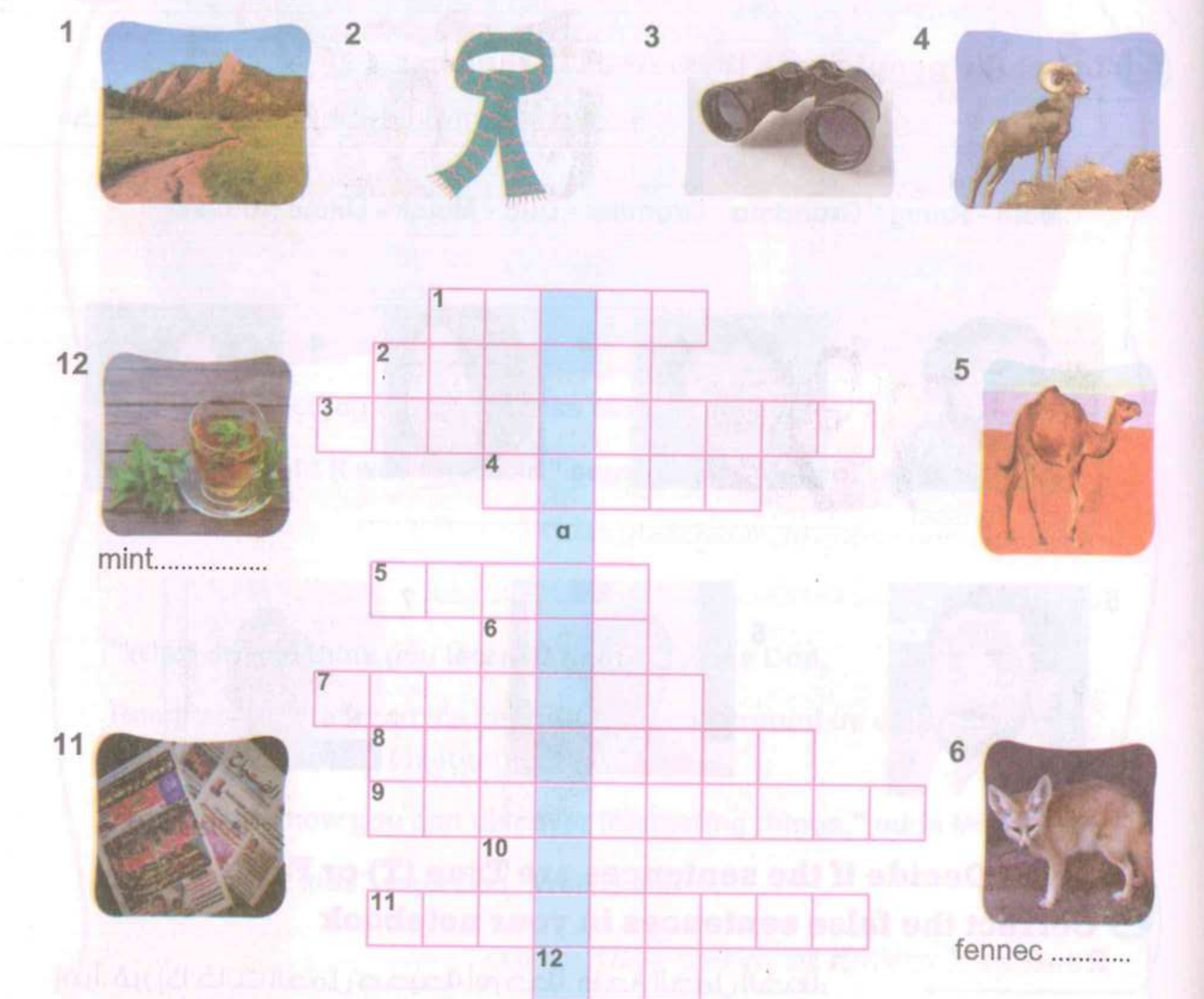
إقرأ. قرر إذا كانت الجمل صحيحة أم خطأ. صحح الجمل الخطأ:

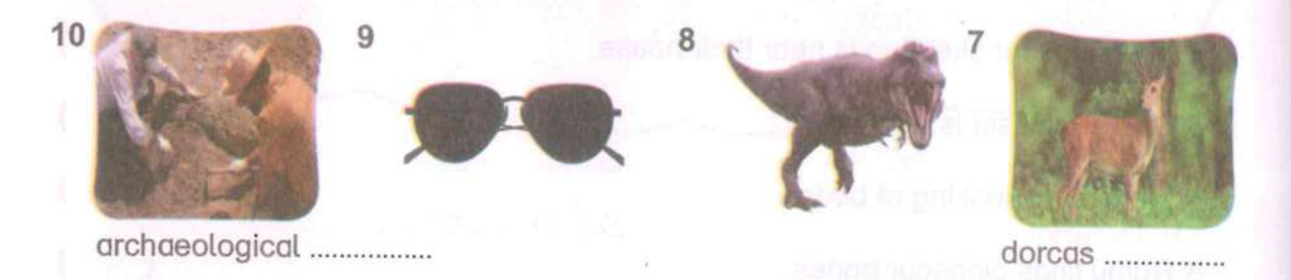
1. Mom sees the story about the dinosaur skeleton in the newspaper. (F)
   Dad sees the story about the dinosaur skeleton in the newspaper.
2. The dinosaur skeleton is near their house. ( )
3. Uncle Youssef is a farmer. ( )
4. Mom loves looking at birds. ( )
5. Ramy finds dinosaur bones. ( )
6. They go to Uncle Youssef's office. ( )

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك ان يتعامل مع هذه الأسئلة

3 Complete the puzzle with words from the story. What's the word in yellow?

أكمل اللغز بكلمات من القصة. ما هى الكلمة باللون الأصفر؟





4 Look and number in order:

أنظر ورقم بالترتيب:

a  ☐

b  ☐

c  ☐

d  ☐

e  ☐

f  ☐

5 Read and match to make sentences:

إقرأ وصل لتكوين جمل:

A	B
1 Dad reads a story	a. live near the archaeological dig.
2 The children's grandparents	b. the family to the dig.
3 Ramy finds old bones	c. about a dinosaur in the newspaper.
4 Uncle Youssef invites	d. an archaeologist in the future.
5 Ramy wants to be	e. in some rocks near the trail.

6 Work with a partner. Retell the story by looking at the pictures in Exercise 4 and using your answers to Exercise 5. What is your favorite scene? Why?

اعمل مع زميلك. أعد سرد القصة بالنظر إلى الصور فى التمرين ٤ واستخدام الإجابات فى التمرين ٥. ما هو مشهدك المفضل؟ لماذا؟:

7 Read and complete the story summary with the words in the box:

إقرأ وأكمل ملخص القصة بالكلمات في القائمة:

ibex - rocks - next - trail - invites - dig - fun - Dad - skeleton - Grandma

At home, Dad reads a newspaper story about a dinosaur (2) .... He's very excited because Uncle Youssef is working on the archaeological (3) .... At dinnertime, he suggests to the family that they visit (4) ...., who lives near the dig. The family loves the idea and they travel to see them the (5) .... day. Grandma and Grandpa are very happy to see them. The family go on a nature (6) .... and see lots of beautiful animals and birds. Ramy sees some bones in the (7) .... and he thinks they are dinosaur bones. Uncle Youssef checks the rocks and says they are not dinosaur bones, but probably from an (8) .... He says it is a very good thing that Ramy is taking time to notice things on the trail. He also (9) .... them to go to his archaeological dig, which they think is a lot of (10) ....

8 Work with a partner. Discuss the questions:

إعمل مع زميلك. ناقش الأسئلة:

1. Why is it important to look carefully at the world around you?
2. What information can archaeology give us?
3. Why is archaeology an important activity in Egypt?
4. Why are dinosaur skeletons interesting? What can they tell us?

General Activities

تدريبات شاملة على منهج الفصل الدراسي الثاني

Activity 1

1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False): استمع واكتب (صواب) أو (خطأ)

نص الاستماع اخر الكتاب

	True	False
1. Ancient Egyptians made their homes near the sea.		
2. They used mud from the river.		
3. They used wood to make bricks for their houses.		
4. Ancient Egyptians wanted to keep their homes hot.		

2 Listen and complete: استمع واكمل:

نص الاستماع اخر الكتاب

1. Leila is in .... now.
2. Leila's family arrived last ....
3. Leila's family traveled by ....
4. Leila's family visited temples and ....

3 Read and match (A) with (B): اقرأ وصل:

A	B
1 How many glasses of water	a. to keep their homes cool.
2 I could speak French	b. for your health?
3 The Egyptian tortoise is	c. got a cough.
4 Why is water important	d. do you drink every day?
5 Ancient Egyptians wanted	e. one of the smallest tortoises in the world.
	f. when I lived in France.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

Last summer in August, I was sitting by the window in the evening, reading a story. Suddenly, I heard a strange sound coming from my garden. I was scared. I couldn't see anything because it was too dark. I called my parents and went out to the garden with a torch. I found my neighbor's dog. It jumped into our garden. I gave it food and water and took **it** to my neighbor, Mr Essam. He's a vet and looks after many animals. He thanked and invited me to have dinner with him.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The writer couldn't see anything because it was ....

a cold b light c dark d raining

2. The underlined word "it" refers to the ....

a dog b garden c story d torch

B. Answer the following questions:

3. What's Mr Essam's job? --

4. Why was the writer scared? --

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

1. about - What's - this - new - better - apartment? ------------------------
2. works - food - in - My uncle - a big - factory. ------------------------
3. traveling - She - to - plane - Canada - is - by. ------------------------
4. did - you - When - friend - meet - your? ------------------------

6 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للاتى:

1. what about the bedrooms --
2. dina likes the new apartment --

7 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من ٤٠ كلمة عن:

A good swimmer

pool - well

Activity 2

1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False):

استمع واكتب (صواب) أو (خطأ)

نص الاستماع اخر الكتاب

	True	False
1 Last week, I had a wonderful day out.		
2 I had a wonderful day out with my friends.		
3 I could see lions through the trees.		
4 The kangaroos could sit outside their mom's pouch.		

2 Listen and complete:

استمع واكمل:

نص الاستماع اخر الكتاب

1. Tamer lives in ....
2. He likes his .... very much.
3. There's a lot to see and .... there.
4. Alexandria has wonderful ....

3 Read and match (A) with (B):

اقرأ وصل:

A	B
1 Ali's watch is very	a. exciting place.
2 Where does our water	b. poisonous.
3 Be careful! That snake is	c. a new job.
4 Alexandria is a really	d. live in your old apartment?
5 How long did you	e. expensive.
	f. come from?

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

Hi, my name's Maria. I'm thirteen years old. I don't live in a village or a city like many other children. I live on a boat in the sea near India. I don't walk or ride a bike to school because my school is on a boat, too. My friends and I swim to school every morning. At school we build boats and learn how to catch fish. I'm very good at swimming and I can swim in very deep water to catch big fish. Tomorrow, I'm going with my family to the city to sell fish in the market. I'm excited to see houses and shops there.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Maria and her friends .... to school every morning.

a swim b cycle c walk d fly

2. Maria is .... to see the city.

a sad b excited c unhappy d bored

B. Answer the following questions:

3. What does Maria learn at school? --

4. Where is Maria going with her family tomorrow? ------------------------

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

1. friend - person - is - My - a nice. ------------------------
2. you - Are - lost ? ------------------------

3. visit - can - museums - How many - you- on - this trip? ----------------
4. legs - I - or - have - don't - arms. ----------------

6 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

1. i love my bedroom ----------------
2. where is the bank ----------------

7 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the following guiding elements: اكتب فقرة إنشائية من ٤٠ كلمة عن:

Alexandria Library

don't run - librarian

Activity 3

1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False): استمع واكتب (صواب) أو (خطأ)

نص الاستماع اخر الكتاب

	True	False
1 My friends and I like going to the sports club.		
2 We have swimming lessons in the club once a week.		
3 My uncle is a good swimmer .		
4 My uncle helps us to learn how to play football.		

2 Listen and complete: استمع واكمل:

نص الاستماع اخر الكتاب

1. Nagy lives in a small .... near Cairo.
2. He has a .... time there.
3. There are a few .... and houses.
4. Everyone who lives here is really ....

3 Read and match (A) with (B): اقرأ وصل:

A	B
1 My sister	a. very big animals.
2 What's your favorite	b. in the library!
3 Dinosaurs were	c. Ancient Egyptian writing.
4 Don't eat	d. information about their life.
5 Hieroglyphics are	e. unusual animal?
	f. sings badly.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

I went with my friend Hisham to the theme park on vacation. We went on different rides. The weather was nice. We had lunch and ice cream. We took lots of photos with my phone. We had a wonderful time. Then, we went home by taxi at five o'clock.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. They took lots of photos with the writer's ....

a camera b tablet c phone d computer

2. They went home by ....

a car b taxi c metro d bus

B. Answer the following questions:

3. Who did the writer go with at the theme park? ----------------
4. What could they see at the theme park? ----------------

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences: أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

1. movies – going- How about - the - to - tonight? ----------------
2. in - Do - a house - you - or - live - an apartment? ----------------
3. trees - lots of- It's - to - plant - important. ----------------
4. beans - the - Give - sacks - me - of. ----------------

6 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

1. they came here by airplane

----

2. how long did you live here

----

7 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the following guiding elements:
اكتب فقرة إنشائية من ٤٠ كلمة عن:

Natural resources

sunlight - stones



Activity 4

1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False): استمع واكتب (صواب) أو (خطأ)

نص الاستماع اخر الكتاب

	True	False
1 My father's farm is near Aswan.		
2 My father has a white galabeya.		
3 He eats his breakfast after going to his work.		
4 He has animals on his farm.		

2 Listen and complete: استمع واكمل:

نص الاستماع اخر الكتاب

1. Noura was in the .... Sea.
2. She arrived on the ....
3. She went on a ....
4. She sat around a ....

3 Read and match (A) with (B): اقرأ وصل:

A	B
1 What's	a. long pointed stick.
2 Last year, he could	b. keep their homes cool.
3 I have a cut	c. lived in France.
4 A tusk is a	d. run very quickly.
5 Ancient Egyptians wanted to	e. the matter?
	f. on my arm.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

My friend Noha got up late yesterday because she stayed up at night watching TV. She ran quickly to wear her school uniform. It was eight o'clock. She took her school bag and didn't take any food with her. She rode the bus. When she arrived at school, she found there were no pupils at school. She remembered it was Friday.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Noha didn't take any .... with her to school.
   a uniforms b foods c TVs d bags
2. Noha remembered that yesterday was ....
   a Monday b Tuesday c Friday d Sunday

B. Answer the following questions:

3. Why did Noha get up late yesterday? ----------------------------
4. How did Noha get to school? ----------------------------

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:
أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

1. with - I - my - share - sister - a room. ----------------------------
2. important - trees - Why - for - are - animals? ----------------------------
3. Fares - How - feel - does - today? ----------------------------
4. cities - of - the most - This is - one - exciting. ----------------------------

6 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. I didn t arrive on time
----
2. what did they use mud bricks for
----

7 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the following guiding elements:
اكتب فقرة إنشائية من ٤٠ كلمة عن:

A headache

doctor's - pills



Activity 5

1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False): استمع واكتب (صواب) أو (خطأ)

نص الاستماع اخر الكتاب

	True	False
1 I had a lovely day last week.		
2 I traveled to Alexandria with dad.		
3 I traveled to Alexandria to see my aunt.		
4 We went by train.		

2 Listen and complete: استمع واكمل:

نص الاستماع اخر الكتاب

1. The email was from.......................... .
2. He is traveling around the world with his.......................... .
3. They were in .... last week.
4. He sent me nice ....

3 Read and match (A) with (B): اقرأ وصل:

A	B
1 An ibex is a type of	a. plant lots of trees.
2 An archaeologist is	b. the traffic light is red.
3 A stream is	c. desert animal like a gazelle.
4 I couldn't take the bus so	d. someone who digs underground.
5 It's important to	e. like a river, but smaller.
	f. I had to walk.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

I like eating honey for breakfast. I have many jars of honey in my kitchen. It's very useful. We can put honey in some food like sweet basbousa. <u>It</u> is also used as a treatment for some injuries. When you cough, you can mix honey with lemon to get better. You can drink honey with lemon when you have a cold, too.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. When you have a cold, you can mix honey with ....
   a tea   b lemon   c juice   d water
2. The underlined word "<u>It</u>" refers to ....
   a honey   b food   c lemon   d milk

B. Answer the following questions:

3. When do you eat honey? --
4. Why is honey useful? --

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

1. have - <u>Do</u> - a sore - you - throat? ----------------------------
2. the - grow - <u>Does</u> - farmer - vegetables? ----------------------------
3. fast - car - drove - <u>She</u> - the - too. ----------------------------
4. to - <u>I</u> - elephants - see - and - want - lions. ----------------------------

6 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للاتى:

1. he could read and write ----------------------------
2. what s the matter? ----------------------------

7 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من ٤٠ كلمة عن:

The River Nile

banks - two branches

Activity 6

1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False): استمع واكتب (صواب) أو (خطأ)

نص الاستماع اخر الكتاب

	True	False
1 New Alamein is a very famous village in Egypt.		
2 There are many exciting things to do in it.		
3 The city is on the river.		
4 Next summer, I will visit it with my family.		

2 Listen and complete: استمع واكمل:

نص الاستماع اخر الكتاب

1. Magdy is writing from a nature ....
2. Magdy packed good .... shoes.
3. There are unusual .... and trees.
4. Magdy was lucky enough to see a .... fox.

3 Read and match (A) with (B): اقرأ وصل:

A	B
1 Yesterday, they	a. they going?
2 Wael swims well.	b. about 36 degrees.
3 Where are	c. went to a museum.
4 There is a big train	d. station in our town.
5 What book are	e. you reading?
	f. He is a good swimmer.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

I live in a big and modern city. Its streets are big and clean. It has a lot of shops in a big mall. It has hospitals, schools and restaurants, too. There are places of fun like cinemas, clubs and parks. Our city is beautiful. It has a long river. It goes from south to north. There are some bridges to cross from side to side over the river. Many people from different countries come to our city. They stay in hotels, eat in our restaurants and spend nice time on the river bank.

A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

1. People spend their time on the .... banks.
   a river b ocean c sea d lake
2. The streets of the city are ....
   a clean b dirty c crowded d small

B- Answer the following questions:

3. What are the fun places in the city? ....
4. Where do people from different countries stay? ....

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

1. did - at - When - you - the airport - arrive? ....
2. your - animal - favorite - What's - unusual? ....
3. glasses - I - of - drink - water - eight - a day. ....
4. and - Stop - noise - listen to - making - me. ....

6 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. i don't have a headache ....
2. what do you learn at the library ....

7 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the following guiding elements: اكتب فقرة إنشائية من ٤٠ كلمة عن:

The kangaroo

1- Where does it live?
2- How does it walk?

....
....
....

Activity 7

1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False): استمع واكتب (صواب) أو (خطأ)

نص الاستماع اخر الكتاب

		True	False
1	Yesterday, Hany went to a wild park.		
2	Hany went to a wild park with his friends.		
3	They saw lots of different animals.		
4	Hany is doing a project on bats at school.		

2 Listen and complete: استمع واكمل:

نص الاستماع اخر الكتاب

1. .... has a new house.
2. Amal lived in the old house for.................... years.
3. The new house has more ....
4. The .... is bigger.

3 Read and match (A) with (B): اقرأ وصل:

A	B
1 I don't have	a. on a boat trip.
2 Do you need	b. live in your old apartment?
3 Yesterday, we went	c. dangerous.
4 Unsafe means	d. sad.
5 How long did you	e. a headache.
	f. any help?

4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

My family and I went to the zoo once a month. We usually arrived at the zoo at ten o'clock. We went round and saw the animals and birds. I liked to play with monkeys. I didn't like lions. My sister rode the elephant. My father gave the giraffes some carrots to eat. We had lunch at three o'clock. We went home at five o'clock.

A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The father gave the giraffes some ....
   a meat   b carrots   c bread   d cakes
2. They went to the zoo once a ....
   a week   b month   c year   d day

B- Answer the following questions:

3. What did the sister ride? ....
4. When did they go back home? ....

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences: أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

1. had - houses - a special - Egyptian - style. ....
2. to - the - go - we - Children's - Can - Library? ....
3. weekend - free - Are - on - you - the? ....
4. the club - on - go - We - to - Saturdays. ....

6 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

1. i have a cut on my arm
....
2. is the ferry very fast
....

7 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the following guiding elements: اكتب فقرة إنشائية من ٤٠ كلمة عن:

New Alamein

beach - International Park

....
....
....

Activity 8

1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False): استمع واكتب (صواب) أو (خطأ)

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب

	True	False
1 I love my village.		
2 My town is big and clean.		
3 There is a big zoo near the school.		
4 We can help to feed the animals.		

2 Listen and complete: استمع واكمل:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب

1. Emad doesn't .... well.
2. Emad has a ....
3. Emad doesn't have a ....
4. The doctor gave Emad ....

3 Read and match (A) with (B): اقرأ وصل:

A	B
1 A breeze is	a. help the villager.
2 Do you	b. from the shopping mall.
3 The opposite of usual is	c. have a toothache?
4 Gabi offered to	d. Stay home.
5 I bought some new clothes	e. a little wind.
	f. unusual.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

Rasha and Laila visited their grandmother on her birthday. They had cards and balloons for her. Mother made a beautiful cake and the father bought a blue necklace. They went to their grandmother's house by car.

Rover, their dog, couldn't go with them because the car is very small. Grandmother liked the balloons and the cakes. She thanked the father for the beautiful necklace. Grandmother was very happy. It was a very nice birthday.

A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The father bought a .... necklace.
   a red b yellow c white d blue
2. They went to the grandmother's house by ....
   a train b car c taxi d metro

B- Answer the following questions:

3. Why didn't Rover go with them? ....
4. What did Rasha and Laila have for their grandmother? ....

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

1. yesterday - lovely - We - had - a - day. ....
2. from - things - Artifacts - daily - are - life. ....
3. you - we - 7 am - pick up - Should - at? ....
4. Nader - have - Does - headache - a? ....

6 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

1. i live in giza ....
2. where does water come from ....

7 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the following guiding elements: اكتب فقرة إنشائية من ٤٠ كلمة عن:

A house in Ancient Egypt

1- What did they use to build it?
2- Where did they sleep?

....
....
....
....
....

Activity 9

1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False): استمع واكتب (صواب) أو (خطأ)

نص الاستماع اخر الكتاب

		True	False
1	My uncle is a doctor.		
2	My uncle loves animals.		
3	My uncle loved London because the people were friendly.		
4	London is quiet and clean.		

2 Listen and complete: استمع واكمل:

نص الاستماع اخر الكتاب

1. The Ancient Egyptians were ....
2. The .... was in charge.
3. The nobles collected ....
4. Soldiers were busy keeping Egypt ....

3 Read and match (A) with (B): اقرأ وصل:

A	B
1 Unfriendly means	a. He was very sad.
2 His cat died last week.	b. at the club?
3 How do	c. leaves.
4 A rock is hard.	d. you feel?
5 Did you have a good day	e. It is a large stone.
	f. not kind to someone.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

A fox was walking through a wood. The fox was hungry. It saw a bird in a tree. The bird had a piece of meat in its mouth. The fox was very clever and asked the bird to sing a song. The bird opened its mouth to sing. The meat fell out. The fox caught the meat and ate it. Then, it ran away.

A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The fox saw a .... in the tree.
   a bird b singer c piece of meat d cat
2. The bird opened its mouth to ....
   a talk b sing c eat d fall

B- Answer the following questions:

3. Was the fox hungry? --

4. Where was the fox walking? --

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

1. visit - at - you - Al-Azhar Park - night - Did? ------------------------

2. last - cut - week- my - I - knee. ------------------------------

3. in - I - the - fell - playground - over. ----------------------------

4. when - a bike - you - Could you- ride - were - three? ------------------

6 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للاتى:

1. where does rain fall from --

2. my cousin is a very good boy--

7 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من ٤٠ كلمة عن:

My vacation

snorkeling - colored fish

Activity 10

1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False):

استمع واكتب (صواب) أو (خطأ)

نص الاستماع اخر الكتاب

	True	False
1 We went to a school trip to Wadi El Rayan.		
2 The waterfalls are seventy-six meters high.		
3 There are different birds there.		
4 There's no sound of the falling water.		

2 Listen and complete:

استمع واكمل:

نص الاستماع اخر الكتاب

1. I like reading about ....

2. I read a book about the ....

3. It's got a lovely, friendly ....

4. It spends many hours eating ....

3 Read and match (A) with (B):

اقرأ وصل:

A	B
1 He did his	a. tall plant with branches
2 What are you taking	b. smaller than a town or city.
3 A tree is a very	c. city in Egypt.
4 A village is much	d. didn't need any help.
5 Cairo is a famous	e. homework happily.
	f. on the Red Sea Mountain Trail?

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

My aunt Nagwa doesn't have children. She likes keeping pets at her house. Her house is big. She has two pets; a cat and a dog. She keeps her cat in a small room in her house and the dog has a little box in the garden. The cat's name is Bagy and the dog's name is Rama. Aunt Nagwa looks after her pets. She feeds and cleans her pets every day. Then, they walk with her in the garden.

A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Aunt Nagwa has two ----------------.

a children b pets c sons d cousins

2. There's a ---------------- in aunt Nagwa's house.

a garden b farm c river d shop

B- Answer the following questions:

3. How does aunt Nagwa look after pets? ----------------------------

4. What's the dog's name? --

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

1. all - My - traveled - over - dad - Egypt. ---------------------------

2. book - to - its - Return - the - place. -------------------------------

3. eat - did - park - Where - in the - they? ----------------------------

4. next - start - our - at 2 pm - Does - class? --------------------------

6 Punctuate the following:
ضع علامات الترقيم للاتى:

1. what's his favorite unusual animal ------------------------------------
2. i have an earache ------------------------------------

7 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the following guiding elements:
اكتب فقرة إنشائية من ٤٠ كلمة عن:

Al-Azhar park

picnic - bench

Activity 11

1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False):
استمع واكتب (صواب) أو (خطأ):

نص الاستماع اخر الكتاب

		True	False
1	Playing football in the street has pros and cons.		
2	Playing in the street is dangerous for children.		
3	You can play in the street when it's raining.		
4	The best place to play football is in the club.		

2 Listen and complete:
استمع واكمل:

نص الاستماع اخر الكتاب

1. The building is very ....
2. The apartment is in ....
3. My father will buy new ....
4. The building is in front of the ....

3 Read and match (A) with (B):
اقرأ وصل:

A	B
1 My friend is	a. on Mondays.
2 Many tourists come	b. the car fast.
3 My uncle works in	c. exercise again.
4 Adam drove	d. a nice person.
5 I go swimming	e. a big food factory in Tanta.
	f. to visit Egypt.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:
اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

Lions are strong animals. They live in Africa. You can see them in the zoo and the circus, too. They look like very big cats. They have sharp teeth and claws. They eat meat. We can't go near them. At the circus, they can do many shows. I enjoy watching **them**.

A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The passage is about the ....
   a penguin b lion c rabbit d dog
2. The underlined word "**them**" refers to the ....
   a animals b cats c lions d teeth

B- Answer the following questions:

3. What do lions eat? ------------------------------------
4. Where do lions live? ------------------------------------

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:
أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

1. to - Don't - your - be - unkind - friends. ------------------------
2. the - What - matter - is - , Dina? ------------------------
3. near - go - Could - the - you - lions? ------------------------
4. places - park - You - in - mustn't - wrong. ------------------------

6 Punctuate the following:
ضع علامات الترقيم للاتى:

1. who is from Alexandria

----

2. this is the egyptian Museum.

----

7 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من ٤٠ كلمة عن:

An unusual home

unusual - Netherlands

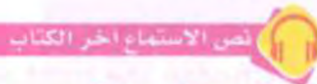


Al Azhar Activity 12

الأزهر الشريف

1 Listen and choose the correct answer:

استمع واختر:



1. Menna is in primary .... (five - two - four)
2. My mother is a .... (vet - doctor - teacher)

2 Read and complete the dialog:

اقرأ وأكمل:

animals - go - zoo

A : Where did you ---------------------------------- last Friday?

B : I went to the ----------------------------------.

A : What did you see?

B : I saw some ----------------------------------.

3 Read and choose the correct answer:

اقرأ واختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

Egypt is a great country. People in Egypt are very kind. Tourists come to Egypt from everywhere. They go to Giza to see the Pyramids. In Alexandria, they visit the Alexandria Library. I love Egypt very much.

Choose the correct answer:

1. Egypt is a great .... (village - town - country)
2. People in Egypt are very .... (unkind - kind - bad)
3. .... come to Egypt from everywhere. (Farmers - Doctors - Tourists)
4. Tourists go to Giza to see the .... (Pyramids - museum - zoo)
5. In Alexandria, they visit the Alexandria .... (park - farm - Library)

4 Choose the correct answer:

اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. Yesterday, I .... to the park.
   a) go   b) went   c) going

2. .... falls from clouds.
   a) Rain   b) Tea   c) Milk
3. .... eat in the library, please.
   a) Doesn't   b) Didn't   c) Don't
4. Ahmed swims well. He is a good ....
   a) swimmer   b) footballer   c) vet
5. We go to the club .... Fridays.
   a) at   b) in   c) on

5 Choose the correct answer:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Dad reads a story about a .... in the newspaper.
   a) cat   b) lion   c) dinosaur
2. Ramy finds old .... in the rocks near the trail.
   a) bones   b) coins   c) photos

6 Write a short paragraph of FOUR (4) sentences about:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من ٤ جمل عن:

A visit to Alexandria Library

Al Azhar Activity 13

الأزهر الشريف

1 Listen and choose the correct answer:

استمع واختر:

نص الاستماع اخر الكتاب

1. Ramy went for a trip to .... (Cairo - London - France)
2. Ramy saw some famous .... (sights - places - rivers)

2 Read and complete the dialog:

اقرأ وأكمل:

theme - on - should

A : Are you free ---------------------------------- the weekend?

B : Sure. What ---------------------------------- we do?

A : My mom wants to go to the ---------------------------------- park.

B : That sounds fun.

3 Read and choose the correct answer: اقرأ واختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

In summer holidays, my friends like to visit a lot of places. They went to Cairo last summer holiday. They traveled by train. They visited many places. They visited the museum and saw a lot of old things. They were very happy.

Choose the correct answer:

1. In .... holidays, my friends like to visit a lot of places. (winter - summer - spring)
2. They went to .... last summer holiday. (Aswan - Alexandria - Cairo)
3. They traveled by .... (car - train - bus)
4. They visited the .... (zoo - pyramids - museum)
5. They were very .... (happy - sad - unhappy)

4 Choose the correct answer: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. They .... have a toothache.
   a isn't b don't c doesn't
2. I went to the wildlife ....
   a school b park c hospital
3. What did you ....?
   a see b saw c sees
4. She goes to the library to .... stories.
   a eat b play c read
5. I'm very ....
   a tire b tired c tiring

E- The Reader

5 Choose the correct answer: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Ramy wants to be an .... in the future.
   a doctor b archaeologist c teacher
2. .... were very big animals.
   a Cats b Rats c Dinosaurs

6 Write a short paragraph of FOUR (4) sentences about:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من ٤ جمل عن:

My bedroom



- -
- -
- -
- -
- -

14 امتحان دمج

A.Reading (20 Marks)

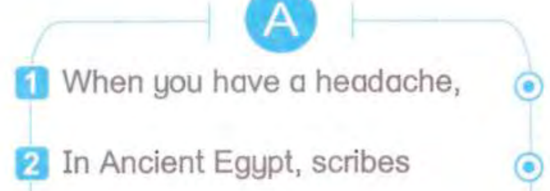
1 Read and choose the correct answer to complete the text: (8 Marks)

اقرأ واختر الاجابة لتكملة النص:

My name is Salma. I live in a big house with my .... (family - friends - teachers - doctors). There are three .... (bedrooms - bathroom - kitchen - bedroom) in my house. My bedroom is very beautiful. We watch TV in a big .... (bedroom - bathroom - living room - kitchen). The kitchen is next .... (to - on - in - at) the toilet.

2 Read and match (A) with (B): (6 Marks)

اقرأ وصل:



A	B
1 When you have a headache,	a. pictures and symbols.
2 In Ancient Egypt, scribes	b. in the classroom.
3 A teacher helps us	c. garden of my hotel.
4 Hieroglyphics are	d. could write and read.
5 A rock is hard.	e. It is a large stone.
	f. your head hurts.

3 Read the text and answer the questions: (6 Marks)

اقرأ واجب عن الاسئلة:

Last summer, I went with my family to the park. We took our sandwiches, apples, and orange juice. While we were enjoying our picnic lunch under a tree, a small grey mouse came very close to us. Suddenly, this mouse grabbed my delicious piece of apple off my plate and ran away.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Last summer, we went to the ....
   a school b hospital c park d beach

2. We took our sandwiches and ....

ⓐ bananas ⓑ pineapples ⓒ apples ⓓ carrots

3. A small .... came while we were eating lunch.

ⓐ cat ⓑ mouse ⓒ mouth ⓓ dog

4. The mouse grabbed a piece of .... off my plate.

ⓐ apple ⓑ sandwich ⓒ banana ⓓ mango

B. Writing (10 Marks)

4 Choose the correct form of the following sentences: (4 Marks)

اختر الجملة الصحيحة:

1- **my - to - new - Welcome - apartment.**

ⓐ Welcome my apartment to new.

ⓑ Welcome new to apartment my.

ⓒ Welcome to my new apartment.

2- **have - Do - a sore - you - throat?**

ⓐ Do you have a sore throat?

ⓑ Do throat have you a sore?

ⓒ Do a sore have throat you?

5 Choose the correct order of the following scrambled sentences to form a meaningful paragraph from a, b, c, or d: (6 Marks)

اختر ورتب لعمل فقرة انشائية:

ⓐ (............................) I will go to Alexandria.

ⓑ (............................) My holiday is next week.

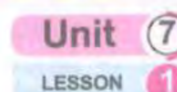
ⓒ (............................) We will go to the beach.

ⓓ (............................) I will go there with my family.

Listening Material (Exercises & Tests)



نصوص الاستماع الخاصة بأسئلة الاستماع الواردة فى الوحدات والاختبارات



Unit 7

LESSON 1

- **Listen and complete:**

My name is Fatma. I live in a modern apartment. There are four rooms in the apartment. The living room is next to the bedroom. I have three armchairs in the living room. The kitchen is big. I bake bread in the oven.

LESSON 3 

- **Listen and write T (True) or F (False):**

The Nile was very important in Ancient Egypt. Ancient Egyptians used it to travel from one place to another. They used mud bricks from the Nile to build their houses. All the roofs in Ancient Egypt were flat. These were the coolest part of the house. Ancient Egyptians sat and slept on reed mats. They used papyrus to cover the windows and doors. This kept the insects outside.

LESSON 5 

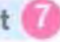
- **Listen and write T (True) or F (False):**

I'm Dalia. I went to my uncle's farm yesterday. He lives in an old farmhouse. He keeps many animals. He has cows, chickens, goats and sheep. I played with the goats. They were very funny. My uncle grows wheat and tomatoes. The fields are brilliant. I enjoyed my day.

Al-Azhar Activity

1. **Listen and choose the correct answer:**

My uncle is a vet .He loves animals.He has two children.His wife is a teacher.They are happy.

Activity Unit 7 

1- **Listen and write T (True) or F (False):**

My name is Ahmed. I live in a big house with my parents and my sister Fatma. I love my bedroom. I share it with my sister.My bedroom is white and green.

There is my bed with a desk next to it. On the wall. there are lots of posters of animals.

2- **Listen and complete:**

Zizo: Where do you live?

Ezz: I live in an apartment with three rooms.

Zizo: What do you have in the living room?

Ezz: I have a television, two armchairs and a sofa.

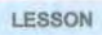
Zizo: Do you have an elevator in the building?

Ezz: Yes, I have.

Unit 8



LESSON 1

- **Listen and write T (True) or F (False):**

My friend Amr didn't go the club yesterday. He had a cold. He has a sore throat. He didn't come to the football practice. He went to the doctor's. The doctor told him to have hot drinks. Amr should stay home.

LESSON 2

- **Listen and complete:**

Amr: Where did you go yesterday?

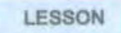
Hani: I went to the zoo.

Amr: What did you see there?

Hani: I saw a lot of animals.

Amr: What animal did you like?

Hani: I liked the lion. I took many photos.




LESSON 3

- **Listen and complete:**

My friend Hazem was ill yesterday. He went to the doctor's. Hazem had a stomachache. His stomach hurts. The doctor said to him to stay home. Hazem took the medicine and felt well.

LESSON 4 

- **Listen and write T (True) or F (False):**

My Name is Doaa. I like honey very much. When I have a sore throat. I have honey with lemon. Honey is very useful. It's used as a treatment. Honey is the sweetest substance on Earth. Some types of honey can kill bacteria.



LESSONS 5 - 6



1- **Listen and write T (True) or F (False):**

I'm Soha. I eat healthy foods. I have a balanced diet. I eat vegetables and fruit. I do exercise every day. I walk to school. I spend time with my friends. My friends are healthy. They keep their body moving.

Al-Azhar Activity

1. **Listen and choose the correct answer:**

I get up at six o'clock. I have my breakfast with my parents. I like honey.Honey has been used by doctors for thousands of years.

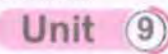
Activity Unit 8

1- Listen and write T (True) or F (False):

I like healthy food. It is really important to eat healthy food like fruit and vegetables. We Should do some exercise every day. It's very important to keep our body moving. Playing sports at school or with friends is a good way to exercise.

2- Listen and complete:

I'm Adel. My brother Fares didn't go to school yesterday. He was ill. He had an earache from swimming. He went to swimming practice last Monday. He went to the doctor. The doctor told him to stay home. Fares took medicine.

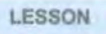


Unit 9

LESSON 1

- Listen and write T (True) or F (False):

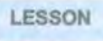
My uncle has a parrot in his house. It's colorful. Its name is Pingo. My uncle puts food and water for Pingo every day. The parrot can talk and repeat what we say. It has a beautiful beak and feathers.



LESSON 2

- Listen and complete:

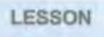
When I was five, I could swim and talk. My brother was two years younger than me. He couldn't talk or walk, but he could listen to music. Now, I'm ten years old. I can use a computer. I can play chess, too. My brother is eight years old. He can swim and sing.



LESSON 3

- Listen and write T (True) or F (False):

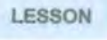
Water is very important in our life. We can't live without it. We need water for drinking, having showers, plants, washing and swimming. We must save water. We shouldn't use too much water. We should turn off the faucet after finishing our things.



LESSON 4

- Listen and complete:

My father is a vet. He lives in a village. Yesterday, he woke up early and wore his vest. He saw a wet cat in the street. He took it and put it in his van. He gave it water and food. The cat was very happy.

LESSON 5

- Listen and complete:

Manal : What are you watching on TV?
Salma : A programme about unusual animals.
Manal : What's your favorite unusual animal?
Salma : It's the dugong.
Manal : What is this strange animal?
Salma : It lives in the sea and its nickname is the sea cow.

Al-Azhar Activity

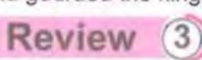
1. Listen and choose the correct answer:

I like birds. My favorite bird is the parrot. It is so beautiful and it can talk. I say some words for it to repeat.

Activity Unit 9

1- Listen and write T (True) or F (False):

My favorite animal is the penguin. It lives in the ocean. It's a friendly animal. It swims in a group with his family. It looks cute and cold. It eats fish. I did a project about the penguin at school. My science teacher was very happy about my project.



2- Listen and complete:

Tarek : What do you know about jobs in the Ancient Egyptian society?
Emad : There were many jobs in the Ancient Egypt.
Tarek : What job would you like in Ancient Egypt?
Emad : I would like to be a soldier.
Tarek : Why do you like this job?
Emad : Because soldiers kept Ancient Egyptians safe and guarded the kingdom, too.

Review 3

Activity on units 7, 8 & 9

1- Listen and write T (True) or F (False):

I'm Dina. I live in Giza. When my parents had to move to a new job, we moved to a closer apartment. It's a bigger apartment. It has more rooms. The kitchen is bigger. There's more space so we can have a bigger television. I like our new apartment.

2- Listen and complete:

I went to the club yesterday. I went there with my friend Omar. We played football. Omar hurt his ankle. I took him home. His parents took him to see the doctor. The doctor said he had to stay at home for a week. I hope he'll feel better soon.



Unit 10

LESSON 1

- Listen and write T (True) or F (False):

My name is Adel. Every year, I go to Alexandria with my family. Alexandria is a really exciting place to visit. It's a very big city. We always stay in a comfortable hotel near the beach. We always have lunch at a big restaurant.



LESSON 2

- Listen and complete:

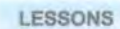
Mohamed : What are hieroglyphics?
Salam : They are Ancient Egyptian writing symbols and pictures.
Mohamed : What do monuments teach us?
Salam : Monuments teach us about buildings in Ancient Egypt. They were built to celebrate important people.
Mohamed : Where were Pharaohs buried?
Salma : Pharaohs were buried in tombs.



LESSON 3

- Listen and complete:

We should encourage our children to visit the library and read books. The library is not the place for running or loud noises. The children should keep the library clean. They should put the books on the shelf after they read them.




LESSONS 5&6

- Listen and complete:

Hi, I'm Salma! I live in a small town. I live in a big house with my parents and my brother, Mohamed. There is a park next to our house. After school, I like to play in the park with my friends. On the other side of the park is my school.

Al-Azhar Activity

1. Listen and choose the correct answer:

Yesterday, I visited Alexandria with my friends. Alexandria is a really exciting place to visit. It's a big city with lots of amazing restaurants and museums. There's even a beach.

Activity Unit 10

1- Listen and write T (True) or F (False):

I'm Hany . I go to Alexandria with my friends. Alexandria is a big city. We always stay in a hotel near the train station. We always have a lunch at a big restaurant.

2- Listen and complete:

We should reading books. If you like reading, the library is a good place for you. You shouldn't make noise in the library. You can't use your mobile phone inside the library. After reading books, you should put the books on the shelf.



Unit 11

LESSON 2

- Listen and write T (True) or F (False):

Ali went to the village to visit his uncle. He saw many trees. He helped his uncle to plant tomatoes. He slept on the grass.




LESSON 2

- Listen and write T (True) or F (False):

Wadi Degla is a nice place. Wadi Degla is cool because you can see lots of animals. I want to go on a trail. I can swim at the Blue Lagoon. Next winter, I will visit Wadi Degla with my family.



LESSON 3

- Listen and write T (True) or F (False):

Hatem is going on the Red Sea mountain Trail. He is taking many things with him. He is taking sunglasses to protect his eyes. He is taking a scarf to protect his head. He is taking some snacks. He is taking a blanket in case he gets cold. It will be a great adventure.

LESSON 4

- Listen and complete:

Yesterday was Friday. Amal didn't go to school. She went to her uncle's farm with his father. She played with her cousins on the farm. She saw beautiful birds singing on the tree and a brown rabbit standing quietly. Amal was very happy.

LESSONS 5 - 6

- Listen and complete:

I have a trip to the Red Sea tomorrow. I prepared everything. I packed my suitcase carefully. I am taking hiking shoes. I took my hat and sunglasses. I'm leaving at 7am. It will be a nice trip.

Al-Azhar Activity

1. Listen and choose the correct answer:

I love Egypt. Egypt has some famous cities, Cairo, Alexandria and Hurghada. Every winter, I like to visit Hurghada with my family. The weather there is warm.



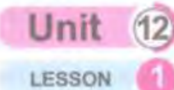
Activity Unit 11

1- Listen and write T (True) or F (False):

Amira and Ola are friends. Amira is going on holiday to Hurghada. Ola is going to Luxor. Amira wants to go on a trip with her friends. Amira is taking some drinks.

2- Listen and write T (True) or F (False):

Omar is a clever boy. He is good at school. He is a good swimmer, too. He can swim quickly. He goes to the swimming pool every Friday. His dad always tells him to be careful. His dad sometimes goes with Omar there. Omar won a swimming race last year.



Unit 12

LESSON 1

1- Listen and complete:

I'm Osama. I went to Dubai last month. There are many high-rise buildings. I stayed in a lovely hotel room. There was a big swimming pool on the roof of the hotel. It was amazing. I went on a boat trip and went on rides at the theme park.



LESSON 3


2- Listen and write T (True) or F (False):

Tourists visit many places in Egypt every year. They always want to check in to a comfortable hotel. They try traditional Egyptian food. They visit the Egyptian Museum. They also visit the old parts of Cairo. They like to go to Luxor and Aswan in winter.

LESSON 4


1- Listen and complete:

Hani can do a lot of activities on vacation. Hani goes to Alexandria in summer. He always goes there with his family. They can see the beach as they stay in a hotel in front of the sea. They swim in the sea and make sandcastles on the beach.

Al-Azhar Activity

1. Listen and choose the correct answer:

Ali is farmer. He gets up early. Ali grows vegetables and keeps animals.

Activity Unit 12

2- Listen and write T (True) or F (False):

Ramy and Adam are friends. They are in primary five. Ramy likes playing football. He wants to play football after school on Thursday. Adam likes swimming. He goes swimming on Friday with his sister, Rawan. Ramy and Adam have a good time.

1- Listen and complete:

Egypt is a good destination for tourists. Millions of people visit Egypt every year. They come from all around the world. They spend their vacation in Egypt. They enjoy seeing many sights. They can see the pyramids. They can visit Luxor and Aswan.

Review 4

Activity on units 10, 11 & 12


1- Listen and write T (True) or F (False):

Yesterday. I decided to go to on vacation to Alexandria. I like to spend my summer holiday there to enjoy swimming on the beach. I packed my suitcase. I took my swimming suit, shorts, T-shirts and my sunglasses. I stayed in a big hotel near the beach. I saw a lot of tourists there. I had a wonderful holiday.

2- Listen and complete:

Ramy : Hi, Walid. Would you like to play tennis after school?
Walid : No, I'm busy today. I have a dentist's appointment today.
Ramy : Do you have a toothache?
Walid : Yes, my tooth hurts!
Ramy : You eat a lot of chocolate.
Emad : I like chocolate very much.
Ramy : But you should eat healthy food.

Activity 1

1- Listen and write T (True) or F (False):

In the past,Ancient Egyptians made their homes near the Nile. They used mud from the river to make bricks for their houses. Ancient Egyptians wanted to keep their homes cool. The mud bricks helped to do this.

2- Listen and complete:

My name's Leila. I'm in Aswan now. I arrived with my family last Sunday. We took a train from Cairo. There is so much to see here. We visited some museums and the temples. We had an amazing tour of famous places. We went to the market. It's really fun, but very busy and crowded.

Activity 2

1- Listen and write T (True) or F (False):

Last month, I had a wonderful day out with my family. I went to the new wildlife park. It was awesome. I could see lions through the trees. The kangaroos were interesting,too.When they were little, they could sit inside their mom's pouch

2- Listen and complete:

I'm Tamer. I live in Alexandria. I like my city very much. Alexandria is a really exciting place to visit. There's a lot to see and do here! It's a big city with lots of amazing restaurants, stores, markets, and museums. It has wonderful beaches. Many people visit Alexandria in summer.

Activity 3

1- Listen and write T (True) or F (False):

My friends and I like going to the sports club. We have swimming lessons in the club twice a week. My uncle is a good swimmer . He helps us to learn how to swim. We should listen to him to be a good swimmer. My uncle is a kind man.

2- Listen and complete:

Nagy lives in a small town near Cairo. He has a lovely time here. It's peaceful and very quiet, especially at night. There are a few shops and houses. There is only one restaurant, but it's great! Everyone who lives here is really friendly.

Activity 4

1- Listen and write T (True) or F (False):

My father is a farmer . He has a farm near Luxor. He gets up and wears his white galabeya and black leather shoes. He eats his breakfast . Then, he goes to his farm by a tractor. He has two cows and a donkey. He works hard on his farm.

2- Listen and complete:

Nora was in the Red Sea. She arrived on the weekend. She went on a trail. She slept in a tent. It was quite difficult to sleep in a tent on sand! It got really cold at night. She sat around a fire. She could see a million stars! It was beautiful.

Activity 5

1- Listen and write T (True) or F (False):

I had a lovely day yesterday. I traveled to Alexandria with mom to see my aunt. We went by train .I love trains. My aunt took us to the Corniche. The sea was really beautiful. We were very happy.

2- Listen and complete:

Today I received an email from my friend Amir. He is travelling around the world with his family. They were in India last week, and this week they are in Singapore. They are going to France next week. He sent me nice photos with his family. Amir spends wonderful times.

Activity 6

1- Listen and write T (True) or F (False):

New Alamein is a very famous city in Egypt. There are many exciting things to do in it. The city is on the beach. There is also a large green lake right in the middle of the city. Next summer, I will visit it with my family.

2- Listen and complete:

Hi I'm Magdy. I'm writing from a nature trail. It's fun. Thank you for telling me to pack good hiking shoes. We have walked for many hours every day. There are amazing things to see - some unusual flowers and trees. One day, I was lucky enough to see a fennec fox and a wild cat!

Activity 7

1- Listen and write T (True) or F (False):

Last week, Hany went to a wild park with his family. They saw lots of different animals like lions,kangaroos,and penguins. He was a bit sad that he didn't see the bats and he's doing a project on them at school.

2- Listen and complete:

Amal: Hi Azza, welcome to my new house!
Azza : Thanks! Do you like living here?
Amal: Yes, I love it!
Azza: How long did you live in your old house?
Amal: Twelve years, since I was born.
Azza : So, what's better about this new house?
Amal: There are more rooms and the kitchen is bigger.

Activity 8

1- Listen and write T (True) or F (False):

I love my town. It's big and clean. There is a big zoo right next to the school. We can go there every afternoon after classes. We can help to feed the animals. There is a big park with lots of trees so we can go there with my friends to play and eat.

2- Listen and complete:

Emad : Hello, Doctor. I don't feel well.
Doctor: What's the matter, Emad?
Emad : I have a cold.
Doctor: Let me see. Do you have a headache?
Emad : No, I don't have a headache.
Doctor: OK! Stay home, sleep well, and take this medicine.

Activity 9

1- Listen and write T (True) or F (False):

My uncle is a scientist and loves animals. When he was younger, he traveled a lot to London for work. He loved it there because the people were very friendly and helped him with his work. London is quiet and clean.

2- Listen and complete:

The Ancient Egyptians were great. The person in charge was the pharaoh. The nobles collected taxes and organized soldiers. Soldiers were busy keeping Egypt safe. As Egypt was such an important and very rich country, the soldiers guarded the kingdom. The army was strong, and the soldiers were good at their jobs.

Activity 10

1- Listen and write T (True) or F (False):

Last week, our class went on a trip to the waterfall of Wadi El Rayan. It was beautiful. The waterfalls are 67 meters high. The sound of water falling is very loud. Our teacher also told us that there are lots of different birds living there.

2- Listen and complete:

I like reading about animals from around the world. I read a book about the dugong. I think it's got a lovely, friendly face and it's very cute! Its nickname is the sea cow and it spends many hours eating grass from the sea bed every day.

Activity 11

1- Listen and write T (True) or F (False):

Playing football in the streets is fun, but it has pros and cons. It's dangerous for children because the cars, trucks and bikes may hit them. Another thing, it may rain and the weather may be bad. The best place to play football is in the club and you must wear the right clothes.

2- Listen and complete:

My family will move to a new apartment in Alexandria. The building is very tall. It's in front of the sea. Inside the apartment there are two bedrooms, a living room with a balcony, a hall, a kitchen and a bathroom. My father will buy new furniture from a famous shop. I like my new apartment.

Al Azhar Activity 12

1- Listen and choose the correct answer:

I'm Menna. I'm in primary five. My father is a teacher. My mother is a doctor. I have one brother. He is in primary two. We go to school together. I love my family.

Al Azhar Activity 13

1- Listen and choose the correct answer:

My name is Ramy. I went for a trip to France. I saw some famous sights like the Eiffel Tower. It was a wonderful trip

Students' Book Listening Material

نصوص الاستماع الواردة فى كتاب الطالب



Unit 7

LESSON 4

Narrator: **Student's Book, Unit 7 , Lesson 4, page 12, Exercise 2. Listen and repeat the words in Exercise 1.**

1- tree 2- spoon 3- sheep
4- roof 5- school 6- seed
7- queen 8- pool

Unit 8

LESSON 1

TR 2.11

Narrator: **Student's Book, Unit 8, Lesson 1, page 23 Exercise 4. Listen and check.**

Narrator: 1
Mom: What's the matter, Dina?
Do you have a toothache?
Dina: Yes, my tooth hurts!
Narrator: 2
Boy: Mom, can I have some milk and honey for my cough, please?
Narrator: 3
Girl: Ouch! My shoulder hurts!
Narrator: 4
Mom: What's the matter, Wael?
Does your stomach hurt?
Wael: No, I have a headache.

LESSON 4

TR 2.15

Narrator: **Student's Book, Unit 8, Lesson 4, page 34 Exercise 1. Complete the words with "f" or "v". Then listen and say:**

Narrator: 1
Boy 1: I have a pet frog.
Narrator: 2
Man: Hany is a vet.
Narrator: 3
Girl 1: I have a very long scarf.
Narrator: 4
Girl 2: Do you like vegetables?
Narrator: 5
Boy 2: I really like fruit.
Narrator: 6
Boy + Girl: We like watching television.

TR 2.16

Narrator: **Student's Book, Unit 8, Lesson 4, page 34 Exercise 2. Read, listen and circle. Then listen again and repeat.**

1- fan 2- leaf 3- life
4- very 4- view 6- safe

Unit 9

LESSON 4

TR 2.21

Narrator: **Student's Book, Unit 9, Lesson 4, page 52, Exercise 1. Listen and repeat the words.**

1- teacher 2- reader 3- climber
4- footballer 5- farmer 6- traveler

TR 2.22

Narrator: **Student's Book, Unit 9, Lesson 4, page 52, Exercise 2. Listen again and write th -er words.** (repeat of TR 2.21)

TR 2.24

Narrator: **Student's Book, Unit 9, Lesson 4, page 55, Exercise 2. Listen and circle the word you hear. Then listen again and check.**

1- west 2- whale 3- vase
4- vet 5- volcano 6- winter

TR 2.25

Narrator: **Student's Book, Unit 9, Lesson 4, page 55, Exercise 3. Listen and write the words.**

1- wheel 2- vest 3- volcano
4- west 5- whale 6- vet
7- watermelon 8- wet 9- violin

TR 2.26

Narrator: **Student's Book, Unit 9, Lesson 4, page 55, Exercise 4. Listen and write. Then listen again and check.**

Last Wednesday I decided to travel west in my boat wearing my vest. I was looking for a volcano but I had some problems. I met some whales and they turned over my boat. I had to sit on my violin to stay afloat! I ate watermelon to stay healthy and I came to shore. I didn't find the volcano, but I met some vets and they took me home to my village!

Review 3

LESSON 2



TR 2.30

Narrator : **Student's Book, Review 3, Lesson 2, page 62, Exercise 2. Put the dialog in the correct order. Listen, check, and repeat. Then act it out in pairs.**

Nurse : Come in, Kareem. What's the matter?

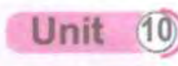


Kareem :I've got an earache.
Nurse :Oh dear. Did you hit your ear with a ball?
Kareem :No, I had an earache when I woke up this morning.
Nurse :Let me see. Yes, it is red inside. I think you should go home. I'll telephone your mom.
Kareem :Thank you, nurse.

TR 2.31

Narrator: **Student's Book, Review3, Lesson2, page63, Exercise 4. Listen then write the words you hear. Then match the words and pictures.**

1- panda 2- penguin 3- dolphin
4- rabbit 5- snail 6- whale



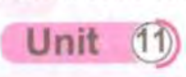
Unit 10

LESSON 1

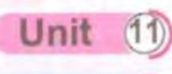
TR 2.36

Narrator : **Student's Book, Unit 10, Lesson 1, Page 71, Exercise 4. Listen. Match the places and people.**

Narrator : 1 Sara
Sara: I'm going to visit my aunt and uncle. We're going by train.
Narrator : 2 Ahmed
Ahmed: My cousin is visiting us and we're going to show him around. He's never seen the Pyramids.
Narrator : 3 Dina
Dina: We went on a school trip to find out how cotton is turned into clothes like T-shirts and dresses.
Narrator : 4 Youssef
Youssef : I want to borrow some books.



Unit 11



LESSON 1

TR 2.45

Narrator: **Student's Book, Unit 11, Lesson 1, Page 89, Exercise 3. Complete the sentences with the words from Exercise 1. Then listen and check.**

1- A **stream** is like a river, but smaller.
2- I love the feeling of green **grass** under my feet.
3- A **tree** is a very tall plant with branches and wooden trunk.
4- A **village** is much smaller than a town or city.
5- It's quite difficult to climb that **hill** because it's very high.
6- Some famous **cities** in Egypt are Cairo, Alexandria, and Hurghada.
7- A **rock** is hard. It is a large stone.
8- I like growing tomato **plants** because I like eating tomatoes.
9- That plant has flowers and lots of green **leaves**



Unit 12

LESSON 4

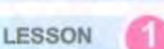
TR 2.61

Narrator: **Student's Book, Unit 12, Lesson 4, Page 116, Exercise 4. Listen and check. Then listen and repeat.**

1- Be careful! That snake is **poisonous**
2- Ali swims and runs. He's very **active**
3- Everyone knows Soha. She is very **famous**
4- His watch is very **expensive**



Review 4



LESSON 1

Narrator: **Student's Book , Review 4, Lesson 1, page 122, Exercise 1. Write the missing letters. Listen and check.**

1- city 2- hill 3- stream
4- village 5- station 6- museum
7- swimming pool
8- shopping mall 9- restaurant



التوزيع : ١٠ شارع كامل صدقى – الفجالة – القاهرة
ت : ٢٥٩١٩١٦٥
للاستعلام وإبداء الآراء والإقتراحات
الإدارة : تليفون : ٢٥٨٨٠١٠٢
دار غزة للطباعة – مدينة العبور الصناعية
تليفون : ٤٤٨١٤٥٦٦

الترخيص : ٢٣٧
رقم الأيداع : ٢٠٢٢/٢٢٦٧٧

ghazzahouse@gmail.com